Master Machine Code on your Amstrad CPC 464 & 664

Jeff Naylor & Diane Rogers



Master Machine Code on your Amstrad CPC 464 & 664

Jeff Naylor & Diane Rogers

First published 1985 by: Sunshine Books (an imprint of Scot Books Ltd.) 12–13 Little Newport Street London WC2H 7PP

Copyright © Jeff Naylor and Diane Rogers, 1985

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording and/or otherwise, without the prior permission of the Publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Naylor, Jeff
Master machine code on your Amstrad CPC 464 and 664
1. Amstrad Microcomputer—Programming
2. Machine codes (Electronic computers)
I. Title II. Rogers, Diane
001.64'24 QA76.8.A4

ISBN 0-946408-82-3

The cover shows a screen shot from *Sorcery*, by kind permission of Virgin Games Ltd.

Cover photograph by Ian Batchelor. Typeset and printed in England by Nene Litho, Irthlingborough, Northants.

Contents

	Page
1 The Z80	ິ1
Binary — a CPU's numbering system	1
Data bus	1
Memory and the address bus	1
Hexadecimal numbering	2
Two's complement	2
The clock	3
External connections	3
The registers	3
Index registers	5
Special purpose registers	2 2 3 3 3 5 5 6
Instructions	6
Load instructions	7
The accumulator	10
Increment and decrement	10
Logical instructions	11
Testing	12
Rotate and shift	12
Binary coded decimal	13
More complex instructions	14
Interrupts	16
Two final commands	16
2 Writing Code	17
Subroutines	17
Loops	17
Planning ahead	18
An example routine — INPUT	18
Writing the source code	20
Assembling the object code	21

iii

	Loading the routine	22
	Testing INPUT	23
	Two things to avoid when writing machine code	23
3	The Hardware and Firmware	25
	Memory devices	25
	The gate array	25
	Video display	26
	Input and output	26 -
	Sound generation	26
	The keyboard	27
	Firmware	27
	Key manager	28
	Text VDU	29
	Screen routines	29
	Cassette manager routines	30
	Sound	31
	Kernel routines	31
	The machine pack	31
4	Machine Code Number Sorting	33
	Sorting methods	33
	The human approach	33
	The computer approach	34
	Integer array sorting	37
	Using the integer sort demonstration	39
	Handling signed numbers	40
	Swapping the values	42
	Sorting floating point arrays	43
	Real sort demonstration	44
	The format of real numbers	44
	SortReal — a floating-point sorting routine	46
	Comparing values	49
	The SWAP? section	50

5	Sorting String Arrays	53
-	String arrays in BASIC	53
	SortString in action	55
	SWAP?	56
	SortArray — the heart of a database program	57
	Database	62
	Parameters for SortArray	64
	SortArray in action	65
	Comparison section	69
	Comparing strings as numbers	69
	The swap section	70
6	Enhancing Database	73
	A search routine	73
	Implementing Search	74
	The ArrayShift routine	82
	Pulling yourself up by your bootstraps	86
17	Graphics — a Circle Routine	91
'	Circle machine code in detail	97
	Multiplying in binary	98
	Calculating the co-ordinates	<i>99</i>
	Drawing the circle	99
	Estimating square roots	100
	Binary searching	101
	SQRLP — machine code to find a square roo	
	Graphics firmware routines	102
	Graphies in invare routines	
8	A Fill Routine	105
	Using Fill	107
	Screen co-ordinate systems	107
	The screen memory layout	108
	The arrangement of the screen memory map	109
	The initial video RAM layout	110
	Changing the base and offset of screen RAM	111
	Masking — how we isolate individual pixels	111
	-	

v

The principles behind Fill	112
The line fill subroutine — LINFL	113
The Fill listing	113
Screen pack firmware routines	117
Extending BASIC	119
Setting up the RSX	120
RSX tables	122
The RSX routine	122
Error handling	124
General purpose subroutines	124
Predictability	125
Flexibility	125
Delay	126
Strings	127

9

CHAPTER 1 **The Z80**

At the heart of every computer there is what is known as a Central Processing Unit. Microcomputers, as you might guess employ a microprocessor as their CPU. The purpose of the CPU is to translate programs into actions. The Amstrad employs a Z80 microprocessor, which is an eight-bit chip with 16-bit addressing. It runs at a clock speed of 4 Mhz. Don't worry if you do not understand these terms now, they will be explained later.

Binary — a CPU's numbering system

Humans normally represent numbers with symbols that can have values between zero and nine. Once a column reaches its capacity, this *decimal* notation uses further columns, each having ten times the value of the previous one to its right. Computers are limited to two symbols, 0 and 1, which are represented electrically by on or off. This numbering system is known as *binary*, with each column having twice the value of one to its right. Hence, 11111111 represents 1 plus 1*2 plus 1*4 plus 1*8 plus 1*16 plus 1*32 plus 1*64 plus 1*128, which works out as 255 decimal.

Using eight columns, or *bits*, a binary numbering system allows us, or a computer to represent values in the range 0 to 255 in decimal. This eight-bit number is known as a *byte*.

Data bus

The Z80 is an eight-bit CPU which handles data one byte at a time, so that its basic unit of data is limited to the range 0-255. Of course larger values can be handled but this involves using more than one byte, and so must be carried out sequentially. In order to communicate with other circuits there are eight lines from the CPU which transmit and receive data, known collectively as the *data bus*.

Memory and the address bus

Memory storage for values, data and programs is essential if a computer is to

function usefully. There are two basic types of memory, both of which are found in your Amstrad computer: ROM (Read Only Memory), from which the CPU can obtain the eight-bit values it requires, and RAM (Random Access Memory), which the CPU can use to store byte values, and retrieve them at some time in the future. Each memory location has its own *address*, so that it, and only it, responds when that address is sent out by the CPU. In order to generate these addresses, the Z80 is equipped with 16 pins, which make up the *address bus* and allow a 16-bit number to be created. Thus the normal limit to the number of memory locations that the Z80 can address is that which can be represented by two consecutive bytes: 256*256 or 65536. one 'K' of memory bytes is not, as you might think, 1000, but the largest number that can be represented by 10 bits, 1024. This explains why you will read of the Z80 being capable of addressing 64K bytes of memory; 65336 is 1024*64.

Hexadecimal numbering

People use decimal numbers and computers use binary, but most writers of machine code programs also use *hexadecimal*. This numbering system works to a base value of 16, with five extra symbols, the letters A - F being used to represent the decimal values 10 to 15. The convenience of this system may not be obvious immediately, particularly as most people have trouble familiarising themselves with these new numbers, but in fact it enables machine code to be written in a very compact form — a sort of shorthand.

The advantage of the hexadecimal numbering system is that it bears a close relationship with binary, without being as cumbersome to write down: a single byte can be represented as two hex digits — FF equals 255; if you come across a number with three hex digits you know immediately that it will need up to 12 bits to represent it. Locomotive BASIC is equipped with HEX\$ and BIN\$ functions to allow you to convert numbers easily.

Two's complement

The convention of 'two's complement' arithmetic allows negative numbers to be represented. For the system to work, we must use the same size of binary number (i.e. same number of bits) calculations. The most significant bit is used to indicate the sign. In the case of eight-bit two's complement numbers, bit 7 is used to indicate whether a number is positive or negative and numbers can be expressed in the range -128 to +127. If bit 7 is zero, the number is positive and the low seven bits give it a value in the range 0 to 127. If bit 7 is 1, however, the number is negative and can be calculated in the following manner. Invert each bit of the number (this process is known as complementing), then subtract 1. The number remaining, with a minus sign in front, is the value of the byte.

The usefulness of this convention can be seen when we add two numbers together. Adding a negative number to a positive one will result in the correct answer. A simple example is the addition of -1 (11111111 bin) to +1 (00000001). Add the two together and the eight-bit result is 00000000 bin — the 1 carried into the ninth bit is lost and the answer is zero.

Appendix II is a table of eight-bit two's complement values. The system is also used for 16-bit values; when FFFF hex is -1, for example.

The clock.

The speed at which the Z80 performs each step of its operations is dictated by the *clock*. Your Amstrad contains an oscillator circuit which sends pulses to the CPU; each pulse triggers the next stage in whatever function is currently being performed. For example, if the processor is attempting to fetch a byte from a memory location, it will send out the address and other signals, and then wait for another clock pulse before reading the data in. The speed of the clock allows other circuits such as RAM to keep up with the processor.

External connections

A Z80 processor has 40 terminals or pins. Some of these are used to feed the CPU the clock pulses and voltage supply (+5 volts) which brings it to life; other pins send and receive various controlling signals, such as read and write. The address and data buses are connected to the Z80 through two further sets of pins — D0 to D7 for the data bus and A0 to A15 for the address bus.

Internally, the Z80 can be divided into three areas — the Control Unit, the Arithmetic and Logic Unit (ALU) and a number of registers.

The control unit translates an instruction into the correct sequence of signals in order to perform the required task and it has associated with it a register, or local memory cell; this register holds the machine code instruction on which the control unit is currently working.

The ALU is capable of performing simple addition, subtraction and logic operations between two values sent to it along internal data paths.

The registers are a collection of local memory cells, each capable of storing eight-bit or 16-bit numbers. Their contents can be sent to the outside world, other registers or the ALU, and they can be loaded with data from the same places.

The registers

The most important of the registers is the *Program Counter*, or PC: this is a 16-bit register which is used to keep track of the program that the CPU is

running. The program information is fetched, one byte at a time, from memory, and the PC holds the address of the next byte which will need to be read in. Another 16-bit register with a special purpose is the *Stack Pointer*, or SP. This holds the address of an area of memory which is used as storage space by certain instructions. (See the POP, PUSH and CALL instructions for a description of its uses.) The main group of registers for use by the programmer, called the general purpose registers, falls into two sections. The Z80 has 14 eight-bit registers but at any one time only one set of seven registers can be used: these are called A (or the accumulator), B, C, D, E, H and L. The other seven registers share the same names, but they are known as the alternative register set. A pair of exchange instructions is all that is required to bring the alternative set of registers into operation. The resident operating system and BASIC language make extensive use of the alternative set of the maternative set of the maternative set of the and to bring the alternation syou will not want to have access to them.

If you do wish to make use of them, however, special arrangements must be made, even in pure machine code programs.

The accumulator, A, is the eight-bit register which is used for many of the arithmetical operations, and all the local ones. The remaining registers in the general purpose group can be used as single eight-bit storage registers, with the advantage of speed over using external memory locations. They may also be combined into 16-bit registers for the handling of address information and other double byte data. When paired off in such a manner, they are known as BC, DE and HL. In general the second register of a pair holds the least significant byte of data: if we stored 256 (100 hex) in the register pair HL, H would hold 1 (representing 256*1), and L zero. The letters of HL help us to remember this; the Z80 was developed from a chip, the 8080, in which H stood for high and L stood for low. A very special eight-bit register is sometimes paired with A: it is called F, or the *flags* register when combined the pair is called AF. Each individual bit of F is itself a flag, and is used by the ALU and control unit to make a note of particular ocurrences. Some instructions have no effect on the flags at all, others affect them to varying degrees. For example, after every ADD operation that is carried out, one bit of the F register, known as the C or CARRY flag, will be set to 1 if the addition resulted in an overflow; this will occur if the answer was too big to store in the register that was to receive the result.

The flags, in the order of their bit number in the F register, behave as follows:

Carry flag: used to store the most significant bit of arithmetic operations. Logic operations reset it to zero. It is also involved in some of the shift and rotate instructions.

Subtract flag: mainly for CPU rather than programmer use. Set each time a

subtract is carried out, reset by an add.

Parity/overflow flag: a dual purpose flag. After certain instructions, such as logic or rotate operations, it reflects the parity of the result. Parity is set if all the bits of the answer add up to an even value. This flag is used in a similar manner to the carry flag by certain block move and search operations.

Bit 3: this is undefined.

Auxiliary carry flag: reflects any carry from bit 3 to 4 during an arithmetic instruction. Its main purpose is for the handling of BCD (binary coded decimal) numbers.

Bit 5: also undefined.

Zero flag: set when any arithmetic or logic operation results in zero. It is cleared if the result is not zero.

Sign flag: after an arithmetic or logical operation it reflects the state of the most significant bit of the result.

These flags are very important to the programmer; they offer the opportunity to carry out conditional operations.

In the above description I have talked of the flags being set (value 1) or reset (value 0). It is worth mentioning other ways used to describe the state of the flags. The term 'clear' is often used to mean that a flag has a zero value. Alternatively, logic terms are sometimes used: 'true' implies that a flag is set and 'false' that it is reset. You will meet such phrases as 'if carry is clear' (meaning the carry flag has the value 0) and even 'when Z is true' (the zero flag has the value 1).

Note that there is also an alternative flags register. For the purposes of the exchange instructions, it is paired with the alternative A register.

Index registers

Two 16-bit registers (which do not have alternatives) are provided by the Z80 to allow an indexing facility. These registers, IX and IY, have a number of instructions which enable them to be used as memory pointers. When loaded with an address, they can have an *offset* (or *displacement*) in the range -128 to +127 added to them and the result is then used as an address to reference memory.

Special purpose registers

There are two eight-bit registers which you will rarely use. The I (or interrupt vector) register is for use with an interrupt mode not employed by your computer. Interrupts are discussed later in this chapter. The *Refresh* register is really part of the Z80 hardware. In an operation completely transparent to the programmer, the CPU puts out signals to refresh dynamic memory chips

after each fetch of an instruction. To which addresses it sends these signals depends on the contents of R, and this is continually being incremented by the control unit. The only use which a programmer can normally make of R is as a random number generator: it is unlikely that a program will run at a speed which is exactly related to the frequency of the update of R, so it can be used to generate random events.

Instructions

The instructions which the Z80 receives come from memory locations. When first switched on and reset (the application of a signal to one pin of the Z80 to bring it to life), the first thing that the control unit does is to fetch the first instruction from memory location zero. This takes the form of a byte which is placed in the instruction register and acted upon. It may be that further bytes are required to complete the instruction — Z80 machine codes can consist of between one and four bytes, which are fetched from consecutive memory locations. The PC is incremented by one after each fetch. When the first instruction has been obeyed, the next one is taken from the memory location of which the address is in the PC.

Before we look at the instructions that are available on a Z80 microprocessor, let me say a few words about the following section of the book. It lists all the types of instructions; operations that are not mentioned are therefore not possible. The shorthand description, or mnemonic, is sometimes given in a generalised form with the following letters

r	General purpose eight-bit register.
	(A, B, C, D, E, H and L.)
rp	16-bit register pair. Always BC, DE and HL. The text will indicate if
-	AF, IX and IY are also included.
addr	A 16-bit value for use as an address.
dis	Eight-bit displacement value.
index	Means that an address is derived from the contents of either IX or
	IY plus a displacement.

The use of brackets around a register pair or value means that the address contained in the pair or given as data is to be used to fetch the actual value from. LD A,(HL) takes the value stored at the address held in HL and stores it in A. In this case it is said that HL 'points' to the data, or that HL is 'being used as a pointer'.

While the mnemonics are listed here, the operation codes (shortened to 'op codes') are given in Appendix 1; these are the actual values that when encountered as instructions by the CPU cause the effect described by the mnemonic.

Load instructions

Instructions fall into a number of categories. The most frequently used group are *loading* instructions; these never affect the flags.

LD r,r: load any general-purpose eight-bit register (including A) with the contents of any other.

LD r,data: load the byte from the next memory location into any general-purpose eight-bit register.

LD r,(HL): take the contents of the memory location of which the address is contained in HL and place them into a general-purpose eight-bit register.

LD r,(IX+dis): add IX and the displacement (which is taken as a signed number), and load the value stored at the resulting address into the general-purpose eight-bit register. The 'two's complement' convention is used for the displacement, or offset, so FF is -1, FE -2 and so on to 80 hex, which is -128.

The A register has additional op codes:

LD A,(rp): the address of the data to be loaded into A can be taken from BC or DE as well as from HL, IX+dis or IY+dis.

LD A,(addr): the address of the data is supplied as two additional bytes, low byte first, in the next two bytes of program memory: e.g. LD A,(2040) takes the form 3A 40 20. This type of addressing is known as DIRECT.

It is also possible to transfer data between A and the I or the R register with these instructions:

LD A, I - LD A, R - LD I, A - LD R, A.

The register pairs BC, DE, HL, IX and IY can be loaded in the following manner:

LD rp,data: two bytes of data, low byte first, are taken from the next two program memory locations.

LD rp,(addr): the address supplied is used in the same manner as LD A,(addr) to find the value to be loaded into the low half of the pair; the high register is loaded with the byte from (addr+1).

All the instructions which fetched a value from an address (but not program memory) — have their complements, these instructions load the memory location specified with the contents of a register or register pair:

LD (HL), r - LD (IX+dis), r - LD (IY+dis), r.

LD (rp), A - LD (addr), A.

LD (addr),rp.

It is also possible to load immediate data from program memory into a location of which the address is held by certain pairs:

LD (HL) data — LD (IX+dis), data — LD (IY+dis), data.

The final loading operation affects the stack pointer:

LD SP,HL - LD SP,IX - LD SP,IY

Note that loading HL, IX or IY with the contents of SP is not possible.

Exchange instructions

Other instructions which have similar loading effects are the exchange instructions, which swop over the values of two locations:

EX (SP),HL: swop the two bytes at (SP) and SP+1) with those in HL. Also possible are EX (SP),IX and EX (SP),IY.

EX DE,HL: swops the contents of DE and HL. The other exchange instructions bring the alternative register set into operation — EX2 AF,AF' for the AF pair, and EXX, for the remainder. No other exchange operations are possible.

Set and Reset

Two instructions load single bits into specified locations. SET loads a 1, RES (reset) loads a 0. Any bit can be specified, such as SET 4,B, forcing bit 4 of B to the value 1.

SET bit,r: any G.P. register.

RES bit,r: any G.P. register.

SET bit,(HL), SET bit,(IX+dis), SET bit,(IY+dis): these set the specified bit in the memory location pointed to by HL or the index registers plus displacement.

RES bit,(HL), RES bit,(IX+dis), RES bit,(IY+dis): as above but they clear the bit to zero.

Another instruction which can be considered as a loading code is SCF. This sets the carry flag to 1.

Many other instructions have elements of loading involved.

Stack operations load and retrieve data and addresses from an area of RAM pointed to by the SP register. A stack is a LIFO storage method, meaning Last In First Out, and it is worth repeating an often used analogy. Imagine placing playing cards in a pile, or stack, on the table. You can only place cards on the top of the pile, and only retrieve cards by picking up the top card first. Therefore, if you put down the ace of spades and then three more cards, you must remove those three before you can rescue the ace.

Data must come from a 16-bit source, and is placed on the stack low byte first; the SP always points to the current 'top' of the stack. The one complication with Z80 stack operations is that they work from high to low addresses; as more data is put in the stack area, the SP points to lower addresses. Placing and retrieving data from the stack uses instructions called PUSH and POP.

PUSH rp: SP is decremented and the contents of the high half of the pair placed at the resulting address. SP is decremented again, and the low half of the pair's contents saved at this new address. A can be pushed onto the stack in conjunction with F - PUSH AF.

POP rp: the reverse process to PUSH, so that POP retrieves the information

which was last PUSHed. The value pointed to by SP is placed into the low half of the pair: SP is incremented, and the new value now pointed to is moved to the high half of the pair. Finally, SP is incremented again.

Jumps

We can load the PC with a new value; this has a major effect on the running of a program. By loading the address of another section of code into PC we can cause a diversion in the normally linear flow of a program. For this reason, loading the PC is given the name JUMP:

JP addr: the new address from which to continue execution is given in the next two program bytes (low byte first)

JP (HL) — JP (IX) — JP (IY) — the contents of the specified rp are loaded into the PC.

JP addr has a number of variants which test one of the flags before performing the load: if the flag tested does not meet the condition required then the load does not take place. These variants allow the flow of the program to be affected on a conditional basis, in much the same way as IF A=0 THEN GOTO 100 would do in BASIC. The possibilities are:

JP NZ: jump if the zero flag is 0.

JP Z: jump if the zero flag is 1.

JP NC, JP C: jump if the carry flag is 0 or 1 respectively.

JP PO, JP PE: jump if the parity flag is 0 or 1 respectively.

JP P, JP M: jump if the sign flag is positive or negative.

While JP needs a 16-bit address, another instruction, *jump relative*, adds an eight-bit offset to the value already in the PC. This means we do not need to know the address of the location to which we wish to jump, just how many bytes it is from the address already in the PC. Jumps to an address lower than the current value of the PC are achieved with negative offsets, in the same manner as those used in the indexing instruction. JR is only possible over a range -128 to +127.

JR dis: jumps the specified number of program bytes. Note that JR FE (18 FE) will form an endless loop, because FE is -2 in two's complement.

Conditional JRs are also possible, but with a limited number of tests:

JR NZ, JR Z — tests the zero flag.

JR NC, JR C — tests the carry flag.

One sophisticated jumping instruction allows program loops to be performed quickly:

DJNZ dis: decrement the B register, and if it does not reach zero, add the displacement to the PC.

CALL addr: similar to the BASIC GOSUB command. The current value in

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

the PC is pushed onto the stack and the PC loaded with the supplied address. Conditional CALLs are possible:

CALL Z, CALL NZ, CALL C, CALL NC, CALL PE, CALL PO, CALL N and CALL M.

RET: used at the end of a subroutine, it POPs the address onto the stack and puts it into the PC.

Returns may also be conditional, with the same conditions as CALL.

The Accumulator

The accumulator, A, is the register which is used to receive the results of eight-bit arithmetic.

ADD A,data: the data immediately following in program memory is added to A.

ADD A,r: the contents of the specified G.P. register are added to A.

ADD A,(HL): HL contains the address of the byte to be added to A.

ADD A,(IX+dis) ADD A,(IY+dis): versions of ADD using the index registers.

Add with carry performs in the same manner as ADD, but includes the carry bit in the sum:

ADC A,data, ADC A,r, ADC A,(HL), ADC A,(index).

Subtract is only available as an eight-bit operation on A.

SUB data, SUB r, SUB (HL), SUB (index).

Subtract with carry includes the carry bit in the calculation:

SBC data, SBC r, SBC (HL), SBC (index).

A limited number of 16-bit operations are possible, using HL as the recipient of the result:

ADD HL,rp: rp may be BC, DE, HL or SP. ADC HL,rp: rp as ADD. SBC HL,rp: rp as ADD.

It is also possible to ADD to the index registers: ADD IX,rp: rp may be BC, DE, IX or SP. ADD IY,rp: rp may be BC, DE, IY OR SP. All of the above arithmetic operations have an effect on all of the flags.

Increment and decrement

A task that is very common in machine code programs is the addition or subtraction of 1 from a value. To facilitate this there are some special operations:

DEC r: subract 1 from the specified eight-bit G.P. register. INC r: add 1 to the specified eight-bit G.P. register. DEC (HL): decrement the contents of memory location (HL). DEC (index): index register versions of DEC (HL). INC (HL): increment the contents of memory location (HL). INC (index): index register version of INC (HL). These instructions affect all the flags *except the carry*. 16-bit versions of the above are available: INC rp, DEC rp — rp may be BC, DE, HL, IX, IY or SP. NOTE — These do *not* affect any flags.

Logical instructions

The next group of instruction are known as *logical*, or *Boolean* operations. AND is a logical operation that obeys the following rule: if the first bit AND the second bit are 1, then the result is 1. Otherwise, the result is 0. The operation is carried out bit by bit between the A register and the specified byte, with resulting bits placed in A.

AND data: AND the byte in the following byte of program memory with A, placing the result in A.

AND r: any G.P. can be used instead of immediate data.

AND (HL): the byte is fetched from location (HL).

AND (index): indexed version of AND (HL).

OR is a similar logical operation, with the following rule: if either the bit being compared in the accumulator or in the specified byte is 1, then the result is 1. If both bits are zero, the result is zero.

OR data, OR r, OR (HL), OR (index).

Exclusive OR (XOR) is a little more complex: if both bits are the same (either both 1 or both 0) then the result is 0, otherwise the result is 1. XOR can be thought of as 'not the same':

XOR data, XOR r, XOR (HL), XOR (index)

With logical operations the carry flag is always cleared, the auxiliary carry flag set, and the other flags are affected as normal.

Two instructions which perform operations on the A register without the need for another byte are:

CPL — complement A. All the bits are inverted. The auxiliary carry is set, the other flags left alone.

NEG — the same as subtracting the contents of A from zero and placing the result back into A. All flags are altered.

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

The carry flag has its own logic operation: CCF — complement the carry flag.

Testing

Testing can be thought of as a subdivision of logic — 'If A is the same as the byte then set Z'.

CP r: the contents of the specified register are subtracted from the contents of A. The result is discarded, but the flags are set according to the result.

CP (HL): HL provides the address of the byte to be compared with A.

CP (index): indexed addressing version of CP (HL).

For testing individual bits of a target byte we can use BIT:

BIT bit,r: place the complement of the specified bit from the specified register into the Z flag.

BIT bit,(HL): HL provides the address of the byte containing the bit to be tested.

BIT bit, (index): indexed version of BIT (HL).

The S and P/O flags act in an unpredictable way; auxiliary carry is set and carry is unaffected.

Rotate and shift

There is a group of instructions which have a surprising number of uses; their task is to rotate and shift the bits in an eight-bit value:

RR r (Rotate Right): the rightmost bit (bit 0) is placed in the carry. Bit 1 is transferred to bit 0, 2 to 1 and so on. The old value of the carry is put into bit 7. This can be performed on any G.P. register.

RR (HL), RR (index): versions of RR that operate on a byte in memory of which the address is specified by HL or the index registers plus displacement. RRA: a rotate right instruction specifically for the A register. It is only one byte long, and has a different effect on the flags.

RRC R (Rotate Right Circular): similar to RR, but the original value of bit 0 is placed into bit 7 instead of the old carry value. The carry flag also takes on the value of the original bit 0.

RRC (HL), RRC (index): memory versions of RRC.

RRCA: accumulator only RRC instruction.

All the above rotate instructions can be performed in the opposite direction; bit 7 into the carry, 6 into 7 and so on. These are Rotate Left instructions:

RL r, RL (HL), RL (index), RLA.

RLC r, RLC (HL), RLC (index), RLCA.

Shift instructions are a variant of rotate:

SRA r (Shift Right Arithmetic): bit 0 is placed into carry, 1 into 0, etc. The value in bit 7 is transferred to bit 6 but also retained in bit 7.

SRA (HL), SRA (index): memory versions.

SLA r: bit 7 is placed into carry, the others move up a place, and bit 0 is set to zero.

SLA (HL), SLA (index): memory versions.

SRL r (Shift Right Logical): as SRA, but bit 7 is replaced with a zero.

SRL (HL), SRL (index): memory versions.

The manner in which most of the rotate and shift instructions affect the flags is as follows:

Carry is determined by whatever is moved into it: auxiliary carry is cleared. The other flags are all determined according to the result of the operation.

The accumulator-only codes, RRA, RLA, RRCA and RLCA have no affect on most of the flags; carry is set by the bit moved into it and auxiliary carry is cleared.

Binary coded decimal

Two special rotate instructions are designed to deal with binary coded decimal, or BCD values. Binary coded decimal is a convention that is used to store two values, each in the range 0-9, in one byte. Each decimal value occupies either the upper or lower four bits of a byte. To assist the handling of such numbers, there are instructions for rotating a byte four bits at a time:

RRD (Rotate Right Decimal): a byte which is pointed to by HL is the target byte of this instruction. Its lower four bits are moved into the lower four bits of A. The upper four bits of byte (HL) are moved to its lower half, and the original contents of the bottom half of A replace them.

RLD (Rotate Left Decimal): the upper bits of (HL) are moved to A. The lower bits move up to take their place, and they are replaced with the old low bits of A.

The flags are affected as with a normal rotate, but carry is unaffected.

Although it is not a rotate instruction, it is worth mentioning an instruction that facilitates BCD addition and subtraction:

DAA (Decimal Accumulator Adjust): if used immediately after an addition or subtraction, DAA alters the contents of the A register to convert it to a BCD result. If A had contained 55 hex and the instruction ADD A,16 hex had been performed, the normal result, 6B, would be modified by DAA to become 71 hex. This instruction uses the state of carry and auxiliary carry to arrive at the correct answer. All flags are affected.

The Z80 is equipped with a terminal called the I/O pin. It can be used in conjunction with the address bus and external hardware to provide *input* and *output* ports. These are read from and written to in the same manner as memory locations. They offer a separate I/O map for the addition of

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

hardware devices such as video display chips, printer ports and the like. The advantage of using I/O ports for hardware is that they do not use up space in the memory map, and the decoding circuitry is actually made simpler by the use of the I/O pin. To send and receive data via the I/O map, certain instructions are provided:

IN A, port: the port number is a byte of data following in program memory. This is placed on the low eight bits of the address bus, the I/O pin asserted, and a read signal sent out. The data which is then presented on the data bus is loaded into the accumulator.

IN $r_{r}(C)$: C contains the port number for this instruction, which loads data from a port into the specified general purpose register.

OUT A, port: the method of sending data to a port. The port number is provided as immediate data in program memory.

OUT $r_{r}(C)$: allows data in general purpose registers to be sent to port number (C).

An interesting feature of the Z80 is brought to light by the Amstrad. When an OUT (C) or IN (C) instruction is executed, the value of the C register is placed on the low eight address lines for decoding as the port number. At the same time, the value held in B is placed on the high eight address lines. The Amstrad hardware actually decodes the upper half of the address bus to find its port numbers, so it is B that must be loaded with the number of the port that you wish to address — the value in C is ignored. We must still call the instructions by the names OUT (C) and IN (C) unfortunately; these are the standard Zilog mnemonics which are observed by assembler and monitor programs.

More complex instructions

Certain, rather specialised, tasks have been speeded up on the Z80 by the inclusion in the design of some powerful, if complex, instructions. The most commonly used of these are the block move instructions, intended to assist the transfer of data from one area of memory to another:

LDI (*Load and Increment*): load the memory location of which the address is (DE) with a byte of data of which the address is (HL). After the operation, the memory pointers DE and HL are incremented; BC, which is intended for use as a counter, is decremented.

LDD (*Load and Decrement*): load the memory location of which the address is (DE) with a byte of data from address (HL). After this operation, decrement the registers BC, DE and HL.

LDIR (*Load, Increment and Repeat*): an LDI is performed, and if BC has not become zero, the operation is repeated until it does. The effect of this instruction is to load a block of bytes, the length of which is contained in BC

from an area of memory beginning at (HL) into another area beginning at (DE).

LDDR (*Load*, *Decrement and Repeat*): similar to LDIR, but, because the memory pointers are decremented, they begin by pointing to the last byte to be moved and the operation works 'top down'. Both repeating codes are available so that it is possible to transfer data between blocks of memory that overlap.

Most flags are not affected by the LD block instructions; auxiliary carry is always cleared, and the P/O flag is set if BC has not been decremented to zero.

Other instructions in this category are:

CPI (*Compare and Increment*): A holds a value which is compared with (HL), setting the Z flag accordingly. HL is then incremented. BC, used as a counter, is decremented.

CPD (*Compare and Decrement*): as CPI but after the comparison, HL is decremented as well as BC.

CPIR: CPI followed by a repeat if BC is not zero and a match between (HL) and A has not been detected by the Z flag.

CPDR: decrement version of CPIR.

The carry flag is unaffected, but S, Z, and AC are all altered by the comparison, and the P/O flag is set if BC reaches zero.

INI: input the byte from I/O port (C), and store it at address (HL). Increment HL and decrement B only, thus leaving C unchanged.

IND: INI with HL being decremented.

INIR: repeating version of INI; it continues until B reaches zero.

INDR: repeating version of IND.

OUTI: as INI, but the byte from (HL) is written to port (C).

OUTD: decrement version of OUTI.

OTIR, OTDR: repeating versions.

The I/O instructions leave most of the flags undefined; carry is unaffected, and Z set according to the value read or written.

Certain memory locations at low addresses have a special significance to the Z80 microprocessor, because a group of instructions named RST (restart) make them very useful. RSTs are only one byte in length but replace the action of a three-byte CALL instruction. Software writers can place the beginning of often-used routines in these special addresses and therefore save space in their programs. There are eight RST instructions and on the Amstrad RST 30 can patched for your own purposes:

RST 0, 8, 10, 18, 20, 28, 30, 38 — the values indicate the hex address that is to be CALLed.

Interrupts

The Z80 CPU has an interrupt system which allows hardware signals to halt the processing of the current program and divert attention to another routine. It is intended to allow the servicing at regular intervals of external devices that need to be looked at, such as the keyboard. Two forms are implemented: *maskable* interrupts can be treated in a number of different ways and software instructions can disable them. *Non-maskable* interrupts work via a separate pin, and, as their name implies, cannot be ignored. NMIs cause the current value of the PC to be saved on the stack; they disable all other interrupts and force a jump to the memory location 66 hex. There is one instruction which works with non-maskable interrupts:

RETN: returns from a NMI subroutine, and sets the interrupt hardware to allow further interrupts.

Maskable interrupts, triggered by a signal to the CPU's INT pin, can be handled in one of three ways, determined by the use of a software instruction:

IM 0: requires a code to be sent back to the CPU on the data bus; the code is expected to be one of the RST instructions. Mode 0 is not used by the Amstrad.

IM 1: when an interrupt is received, an RST 38 is performed: this is the mode in which the Amstrad runs.

IM 2: the PC is pushed to the stack, the low eight bits present on the data bus are combined with the contents of the I register. This address is then used as a pointer to fetch an address to which control is then passed. Mode 2 is not used by the Amstrad.

Three commands are associated with maskable interrupts:

RETI: returns from a maskable interrupt routine.

DI: causes maskable interrupts to be ignored, or disabled.

EI: re-enables interrupts.

Two final commands

NOP: this code (00) does nothing; it simply occupies space in program memory. It is surprisingly useful when de-bugging programs.

HALT: when this code is encountered, the CPU stops processing instructions. It requires a RESET or interrupt to get the processor going.

The above descriptions cover all the instructions available on the Z80 processor. They are only building blocks for more complex operations: you will come across some of them time and time again; others are so rarely used that they are unfamiliar even to the most experienced programmer.

CHAPTER 2 Writing Code

Writing machine code programs involves assembling the building blocks of the available instructions into a program. Carrying out any major task will require a great many instructions, although there are ways in which we can cut down on the number needed.

Subroutines

Subroutines will be familiar to BASIC programmers. Z80 machine code is equipped with CALL and RET instructions: these allow us to organize a section of code which performs a particular task, and then CALL it as a subroutine from any part of the main program, or indeed from within another subroutine. This has two main advantages: we do not need to duplicate a sequence of instructions to achieve the same result, thus saving the number of bytes needed to store the program, and secondly, subroutines simplify the structure of a program, making it easier to write, understand and correct. One disadvantage is that you need to know exactly where in memory the subroutine is stored. The actual address must be included in the operation code for CALL, which is CD hex followed by the low and high bytes of the subroutine's address.

Loops

The use of reiteration is an important part of high-level computer languages. The BASIC FOR . . . NEXT loop command, the WHILE . . . WEND of Locomotive BASIC and other structures allows us to repeat sections of program, with altered variables, until certain conditions are met. In machine code, the conditional JUMP instruction, combined with operations to test a variable (or more than one variable) can be used to continue or terminate a section of machine code that performs a loop. Unlike subroutines, position-independent loops can be written, which means that code for one position will work if moved to another area of memory. To achieve this, the JR instruction, its conditional variations, and the DJNZ operation must be used. These limit the flags that can be tested, and restrict the size of the loop, although neither of these limitations is insurmountable.

Planning ahead

The first step in writing a machine code routine is the drawing of a flow diagram. Even if you have managed to write programs in BASIC without the aid of a flow diagram, please don't be tempted to do without them for anything other than the simplest of machine code tasks. The initial diagram need not be complete, tidy or well laid out; it need not be comprehensible to anyone but yourself; but you will find that some form of pre-planning is essential if you are to write efficient machine code. If the program is complex, begin by writing in plain English, and don't worry about the nuts and bolts of the program until you have an overall picture of what you wish to do.

Then you begin to sketch out how you might handle the trickier sections. Flow diagrams of these will help you to decide which registers to use, what subroutines are necessary, and what kind of data storage you will need to set up in RAM. This is also the best stage for considering alternative methods of solving problems; a quick look through the instruction set could remind you that, for example, you may be able to use the CPI command for a searching operation. If your task involves the use of many variable values, you should consider where you are going to keep them — it may be possible to keep them in registers and on the stack. If not, is it worth setting up an area of memory and pointing an index register to your new variables area?

Now the more pedestrian sections of the routine can be fitted around the special requirements with an eye towards the subroutines and data areas for which you have already determined a need. I find it difficult to resist the temptation to start coding the program at this point. If you do have patience, a tidy, properly laid-out version of your flow diagram will be a good investment in the long term, particularly if you annotate it with information such as register use, stack contents and the like. Don't be disappointed if your near drawing ends up having to be heavily modified, though. Trial and error, and the correcting of mistakes, are major parts of writing machine code.

When your routine is finally entered, debugged and running, have another look. There is almost always room for some improvement in a machine code routine, even if it is just the trimming of a couple of bytes or a few machine cycles. In general, the less bytes a routine occupies, the faster it will run, unless you over-use loops and subroutines.

An example routine — INPUT

In order to demonstrate some of the principles involved, let's look at a simple example routine, which could have practical use as part of a larger program. Called INPUT, its task is to collect up to 16 characters typed in from the keyboard and place them in an area of memory. The letters that are input by the user are also printed to the screen, and hitting the ENTER key will cause the routine to finish. Let's rough out a flow diagram (*see Figure 2.1*). Now to set about turning the theory into code. The two things that are going to be tricky are fetching characters from the keyboard and printing to the screen. Although it is quite possible, we do not actually need to write these ourselves — the Amstrad already contains subroutines in its firmware ROM which we can exploit. Both these tasks can be dealt with as subroutine CALLS.

Figure 2.1

Set Character Count to 16 Set Storage Address to start of storage area -Get a keypress from the keyboard -LOOP1-Load RAM at Storage Address with keypress Let Storage Address equal Storage Address plus one Is the keypress ENTER? no ves ł Print character to Screen Return, routine over Let Character Count equal Character count minus one Is Character Count zero? ч 1 yes nó 1 Jump back to LOOP1 -LOOP2 Get a keypress Is it ENTER? no yes Jump back to LOOP2 Return, routine over

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

There is a certain amount of jargon used when describing the use of subroutines. You can 'send' data to the subroutine in the registers. For example, 'A sent holding key number' means that you must load A with a value for the subroutine's information before calling it. Information is 'returned' from a subroutine in the same manner: 'result returned in HL' means that the subroutine has placed the answer in the HL pair. The flags are often used to pass information: 'carry returned false if the key is not pressed' is a good example of this. If a register is 'corrupted' it will not necessarily return with the same value it held when the subroutine was called. The routine for fetching a keypress, named KM WAIT CHAR, is reached by calling address BB06; on return the A register contains the ASCII code of the character that was typed: the other registers are not affected.

To print a character to the screen, the easiest method is to use subroutine TXT OUTPUT, address BB5A. This prints the character, the code of which is sent to it in the A register, without affecting any other registers.

The next stage is to choose which registers to use. As we want to collect 16 characters, the character count will begin at 16 decimal, or 10 hex. It is unlikely that further modifications of INPUT would require a count of more than 255, so we can use an eight-bit register. If we use B as the character count register, then we can employ the DJNZ instruction to combine the decrementing of the character count and testing for zero stages of the flow diagram.

We require the routine to store the ASCII codes collected into an area of RAM. In this case we might as well choose the area immediately after the program. The choice of which 16-bit register to use as a memory pointer to this area is between DE or HL. We are already using B, so BC is unavailable; and there is little point in involving either IX or IY as they use extra time and bytes. DE can only be used as a pointer when using A, so HL will give us the most flexibility.

Writing the source code

Let's begin writing the routine. We will use *labels* to mark important RAM locations, and work out the actual adresses at a later stage. The first task is to set up the variables we are going to use:

INPUT	LD B,10	; INPUT is the label for the start of the
		routine.
	LD HL,DATA	; We will know the address of DATA only
		when the routine is coded.

The beginning of LOOP1 comes next:

LOOP1: CALL BB06	; Get a keypress into A.
LD (HL),A	; Store ASCII code in RAM.
INC HL	; Point HL to next location.
CP 0D	; Compare A with ASCII code for ENTER.
RET Z	; If they match, return from routine.
CALL BB5A	; Print character.
DJNZ LOOP1	; Decrement B; if it does not become zero
	jump back to LOOP1.

The instructions for the second loop:

LOOP2: CALL BB06	; Get keypress into A.
CP 0D	; Compare with ENTER.
JR NZ,LOOP2	; If they don't match, jump back.
RET	; The routine is complete.

Assembling the object code

The routine is writen, but the words must now be turned into op codes. Looking up the codes and writing them down in sequence is a simple enough job, except that we don't as yet know the offsets for the relative jumps and the address of DATA. These can be written down as symbols. We will, for the sake of argument, begin our routine at RAM location A600.

Addresses	He	x Co	odes				
A600 — A607	06	10	21	??	??	06	BB
A608 — A60F	77	23	FE	$0\mathbf{D}$	C8	5A	BB
A610 — A617	10	??	CD	06	FE	$0\mathbf{D}$	20
A618 — A619	??	C9	(Fo	llow	ed b	oy da	ata area.)

We can now fill in the question marks. Having written out the codes and addresses we can work out that the data area will start at address A61A, so we load HL with that. All 16-bit data is stored low byte first, so the instruction LD HL,DATA becomes 21 1A A6, contained in addresses A602 to A604. The first relative jump instruction, DJNZ LOOP1, occupies locations A610 and A611, the offset data being required for address A611. The jump should take the program back to address A605. Always remember that just before a jump is performed, the PC will be pointing to the byte after the offset (having just fetched the offset and been incremented). In this case it will hold the value A612. From this you can deduce that JR 0.will have no effect. Counting backwards in hexadecimal is prone to errors: an offset of FE (-2) would take us back to A610, FD (-3) to A60F, and so on. Try counting back to the

location we wish to reach (A605): the answer for the offset should be -13 or F3. To calculate this value, subtract the PC from the target address; if you use the computer, the HEX\$ function and & prefix will make this task easy. The second relative jump, in addresses A617 and A618 (JR NZ,LOOP2) can be worked out in the same maner. Have a go at this — the answer you should arrive at is given in Program 2.1.

Loading the routine

How do we get the bytes of machine code into memory? There are a number of methods, the simplest and most tedious of which is to set up a loop in BASIC that INPUTs the bytes and then POKEs them into place. *Program 2.1* is a little more sophisticated; the machine code instructions are held in DATA statements, thereby allowing them to be corrected if wrong. We will improve this method at a later stage to check for errors, but for now, the program is a quick way to test our short routine. Enter the listing and save it on tape. Now RUN it — after a short delay the machine code will come into operation.

Program 2.1

100	REM ************************************
101	REM ** INPUT Demo **
102	REM ************************************
110	MEMORY & A5FF
120	RESTORE
130	FOR x=&A600 TO &A619
140	READ B\$:POKE x , VAL(''&''+b\$)
150	NEXT x
	CLS: PRINT "Press a key to run code"
170	IF INKEY\$='"' THEN 170
180	CLS: CALL &A600
190	PRINT "Code has finished"
	STOP
210	REM ************************************
211	REM ** INPUT Data **
213	REM ** (CHECK CAREFULLY!) **
214	REM ************************************
220	DATA 06,10,21,1A,AB,CD,06,BB
230	DATA 77,23,FE,0D,C8,CD,5A,BB
240	DATA 10,F3,CD,06,BB,FE,0D,20
250	DATA F9,C9

Testing INPUT

INPUT behaves almost as if you were still in BASIC, except that the ESC key will do nothing. You might like to PEEK the data area to check that the characters have been stored. Notice that there is an inconsistency: even if you press ENTER the next printing occurs immediately after the 16th character. Here is a task for you — modify INPUT so that the print position is always moved to the start of the next line. This should be simple enough, but there is one possible pitfall that you may encounter (no clues!). You could also write a better version of INPUT in which the DEL key will function. You will find a list of the control codes and their functions in Chapter 9 of your Amstrad manual. The ASCII value of DEL is 7F.

The manual assembly of machine code is not only a tedious affair, it is very prone to errors. A good assembler program allows you to type in instructions using their mnemonics, the assembler names. You can edit, move and delete lines as if the instructions were a BASIC program, use special instructions to give values to labels, determine where the code will go, and even read in mnemonics from tape. When you are happy with the *source code*, as the collection of mnemonics is called, the program can turn it into machine code very quickly, the result being the *object code*. This avoids the possibility of human error and saves a lot of time, not to mention paper. If you enter a routine that will not work, the assembler program will, in most cases, blindly follow your instructions, but at least all those relative jumps will be right!

A monitor program allows you to examine and alter the coments of RAM. It is possible to get monitors that can also *disassemble* object code back into mnemonics and allow you to test routines one step at a time, showing all the register contents, the state of the flags and the important areas of memory after each instruction. With such a program, tracking down mistakes is made as easy as it can be.

This book was written with the aid of the Amsoft programs GENA3 and MONA3, the components of the *Hisoft Devpac* system. Although complex to learn to use, and not cheap, Devpac is an excellent, professional piece of software. *The Code Machine* from Picturesque is recommended for being easy to use, while in some respects it is even more powerful than *Devpac*. By all means consider other packages — but remember that the more powerful the program, the more useful it will be in the long run.

Despite what I have said, you won't need an assembler to use and understand the routines in this book. However, when you decide to create your own programs, let the computer do the tedious work for you.

Two things to avoid when writing machine code

One habit of inexperienced machine code programmers is to select areas of

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

RAM for use as variables that are within the program area, perhaps sandwiched between two subroutines. Try to keep all your variables in one, or possibly two, blocks before or after the program, rather than scattered about the routine. This tidy housekeeping will save many headaches when debugging your programs, and if you decide to use indexed addressing, you will be able to access all your variables easily.

Never be tempted to write self-modifying machine code. This form of program alters instructions within itself to cause different events to occur. Finding a fault in such a program can be extremely difficult, and you can never be sure quite what state the routine is in. There are some occasions when programmers can justify the use of self-modifying code — (relocating routines, program protection or lack of RAM), but never use the method unless you have to.

Both the above 'don'ts' will be brought home to you if you ever have a program that a software house decides to publish — on a ROM cartridge! Even if this seems unlikely to happen, it is good programing practice to consider your program area as if it were ROM.

CHAPTER 3 The Hardware and Firmware

Understanding the environment in which the CPU works is as important as understanding machine code itself. In order for the CPU to function, for us to be able to communicate with it, and for it to be able to respond in some meaningful way, many additional components are required.

Memory devices

The most important part of the computer, after the CPU, is the memory in which programs and data are stored. There are two types of memory used. Random access memory (RAM) can have its contents changed by the CPU, but 'forgets' the information it holds when the power supply is turned off. The Amstrad is equipped with 64K of RAM. Addresses 0000 to BFFF are used for general storage purposes. The 16K of RAM between C000 and FFFF is normally used as the video display memory area; pixel information is stored here, and used by other circuits to generate the video picture sent to the monitor.

Read only memory (ROM) cannot have its contents altered, but retains its data in the absence of a power supply. Therefore, it is used to store the built-in routines that run the computer. One area of ROM has addresses in the range 0000 to 3FFF; this is the firmware ROM, containing routines for handling screen, keyboard, sound, cassette and general house-keeping duties. A second ROM uses addresses C000 to FFFF. This is where the Locomotive BASIC interpreter resides: it can be considered as one, complex, machine code program that allows us to write and use BASIC programs. The BASIC machine code itself makes much use of the Firmware ROM. Models of the Amstrad that had disk drives fitted are equipped with further ROM memory.

The gate array

We have encountered a conflict: you can see from the above description that RAM and ROM share the same addresses. This means that circuitry is required to decide which type of memory should respond in a particular circumstance. Write operations are no problem — there is no point in trying to send information to one of the ROMs — but hardware is required to enable the CPU to select its source for a read operation. This is contained in the *gate array*, an integrated circuit built especially for Amstrad.

Video display

The gate array chip handles a number of other functions, most of which are concerned with generating the video signals, which it does in conjunction with the cathode ray tube controller chip (CRT), a 6845 device. Between these two chips, which can both be controlled by the I/O operations of the CPU, the video display RAM is read and converted to a suitable analogue video signal. There are certain time constraints involved in this process, and in order for the gate array to access the video RAM directly, the machine cycle of the Z80 are manipulated so that a clash does not occur. The effect is completely transparent to the user — all that happens is that the CPU is slowed down slightly, running at an effective clock rate of 3.3Mhz, rather than 4Mhz.

Input and output

Other input and output circuitry, such as the cassette recorder interface, printer port, keyboard and sound chip, are buffered from the CPU by a general purpose input/output chip, the 8255 Parallel Peripheral Interface (PPI). This boasts a number of *ports*, not to be confused with the simple I/O port system of the CPU. Because these ports are separate from the computer's data bus we can make them 'latching', that is to say, set a bit of a particular port high and leave it in that state. For example, the signal that switches on the cassette motor stays high until a further signal is sent to the port to reset it. Port A sends and receives data from the sound chip; port B is a read only channel which detects signals from the cassette, control signals to the sound chip, and scanning signals to the keyboard. On machines fitted with a disk drive, a separate controller chip is provided.

Sound generation

The Programmable Sound Generator (PSG), a chip called the AY-3-8912, is a sophisticated device that can generate a wide range of sounds. Once sent the right information it will continue to produce sounds without further attention from the CPU. It also boasts a couple of I/O ports of its own, which are used to help implement the keyboard arrangement.

The keyboard

The keys and joystick connections are arranged as ten rows of eight keys. In order to read a row, a four-bit selection signal is sent from port C to the keyboard, which is decoded in order to select one of the ten rows. A byte of data, fed from the PSG I/O port, via the PPI, can then be read into the CPU. Each bit of the byte corresponds to a particular key in the row, and a decoding process is able to determine which key is pressed. The matrix arrangement is not too good at handling multiple key presses because the rows can interact, but the system is a cost effective way of producing a keyboard.

The Z80 can control all these devices through its I/O ports in combination with control signals in the same manner as it addresses memory locations. Using the devices is not a simple affair, but fortunately for us, the routines in the lower ROM make the task much less formidable.

Firmware

The Amstrad is an excellent machine on which to write machine code routines because not only are the routines that drive the hardware available, but also they are fully documented. The locations of the routines, which are published in the Firmware Specification, can be relied upon. Calls to the operating system pass through a table of JP instructions which are loaded into RAM when the system initialises itself. This table is called a *jumpblock*, while the operation is known as *vectoring*. By implementing this concept, Amstrad can re-write large chunks of the operating system without altering the firmware addresses. The practical outcome of this is that we can use the available ROM routines, and need not use low-level hardware driving routines of our own invention.

There is another reason for vectoring the firmware routines through a jumpblock — it is located in an area of RAM that does not share addresses with a ROM. Whenever a firmware routine is called, either from the BASIC ROM, the firmware ROM itself, or a machine code routine in RAM, which perhaps shares addresses with one of the ROMs, the process is the same. The RST addresses (see Chapter 1) hold the same information in RAM and ROM, and one of the RSTs (8), is coded so as to allow the ROM to be enabled. Before returning from the RST, the state of the ROMs is restored to what it was before the RST occurred. By placing the jumpblock in an area of RAM where it can always be reached, and providing software in the RST addresses which allows us to save and later to restore the current ROM enabling state, the routines can be called from anywhere in the memory map. When a CALL is made from BASIC to a machine code routine, it is safe to assume that both ROMs are disabled. You can leave them in that condition,

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

even if you use the firmware. When you finally return to BASIC, you may leave all the normal registers in whatever state you wish, with exception, of course, of the stack pointer. As for the alternative register set, I mentioned earlier that it is best left alone because the firmware routines make use of it. Even if you do not use the firmware, the computer normally has interrupts enabled in order to keep its timers up to date, and these interrupts will use the firmware. If you really do want to use the alternative registers, it will be necessary to disable the interrupts, or alter the interrupt routines themselves. Although the people behind Locomotive Software are more secretive about their BASIC than their operating system, machine code can be used to add extended commands. How this can be done is demonstrated in Chapter 9. We have used two firmware routines already, and many more will be put to use in later chapters. Wherever I introduce a firmware routine, as well as the address I will give the name and details of which registers it corrupts. Many other useful routines will be explained, but it is beyond the scope of this book to list every single routine, particularly those with very specialised functions. Important calls to the firmware that are not listed in detail elsewhere in the book are given below, divided, as is the jumpblock, into a number of sections.

Key Mar	nager	
BB 00	INITIALISE	Sets up keyboard. No entry conditions. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.
BB06	WAIT CHAR	Waits for a character from the keyboard or an expansion string. (Expansion strings are part of the firmware provisions of the operating system; the DEF KEY command uses them to translate key tokens into strings.) No entry conditions. Character returned in A. Other registers preserved.
BB09	READ CHAR	As WAIT CHAR, but does not wait. If no character is available, carry is returned false.
BB18	WAIT KEY	As WAIT CHAR, but expansion tokens are returned rather than a character from the relevan expansion string.
BB1B	READ KEY	Returns a keypress without waiting: as with WAIT KEY, expansion tokens are returned.
BB1E	TEST KEY	Sees is a particular key is pressed. The key number is passed in A (see the manual for numbers). On return, if the specified key is pressed, Z will be clear: if CTRL is pressed, bit 7 of C will be set: and if SHIFT is pressed, bit 5

BB21	GET STATE	will be set. Also corrupts A, HL. Fetches the caps and shift lock states. L returns the shift and H the caps states, with 00 being
		off, FF on. Corrupts AF.
BB24	GET JOY	Returns a value relating to both joysticks. No entry conditions. H and A hold the state of joystick 0, and L the state of joystick 1, where bits 0 to 5 relate to up, down, left, right, F2 and F1 respectively. If the button is pressed, the bit is set. Other registers are preserved.

Further Key Manager calls are listed in Chapter 5.

Text VDU			
BB4E	INITIALISE	Sets up the character screen. No entry condi- tions. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.	
BB5A	OUTPUT	Sends the character or control code in A to the screen. A study of Chapter 9 of the manual will show that control codes allow you to set text colours, move the print position, and much more. Preserves all registers.	
BB5D	WR CHAR	Prints a character as <i>output</i> , but control codes are not obeyed: a series of symbols is printed instead.	
BB60	RD CHAR	Reads the character at the current cursor position on the screen. Returns carry false if the character is unrecognisable, otherwise carry true and the ASCII code of the character in A. Preserves other registers.	
BBB4	STR SELECT	Changes the stream number on which the TXT calls operate. The new stream number is sent to the routine in A, and the previous stream number is returned from the routine in A. HL is corrupted.	

The Graphics section of the firmware is detailed in Chapter 7.

Screen routines				
BBFF	INITIALISE	Sets up all the screen variables to their default		
		values. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.		

BC0E	SET MODE	Changes the screen mode to the value sent in A. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.
BC4D	HW ROLL	Scrolls the entire screen up or down one character line. If B is sent to the routine holding zero, the scroll will be downwards: A must hold the encoded ink for the new line. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.
BC50	SW ROLL	Scrolls any specified area of the screen by copying. B holds the direction (0=down), A the encoded ink for the new line, while the area is defined as physical character co-ords — right, bottom, left and top in D, E, H and L respectively. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.

Other screen routines are discussed in relation to the FILL routine in Chapter 8.

Cassette Manager routines

BB65	INITIALISE	Sets up the Cassette manager: corrupts AF,
		BC, DE, HL.
BC6B	NOISY	Controls the generation of cassette prompts. If A is sent as zero, the prompts are enabled, otherwise they are suppressed. Other registers preserved.

To write a binary file to cassette, the following routines should be used:

BC8C	OUT OPEN	Opens the file and sets up the header. B should
		contain the length of the filename, HL its
		address. If O.K., returns carry=1, zero=0.
BC98	OUT DIRECT	Sends data to the cassette. HL should hold the
		first address, DE the length, BC the 'call'
		address that a RUN command would enter a
		machine code routine at, and A the file type (2
		for binary). If successful, returns carry=1,
		zero=0.
BC8F	OUT CLOSE	Close the file, ensuring the whole block has
		been sent. Returns carry=1, zero=0 if O.K.
m 1		
To read	the file back in, a	2K buffer needs to be reserved. The following

To read the file back in, a 2K buffer needs to be reserved. The following routines should be used: BC77 IN OPEN Opens the file and fetches the first 2K into the

buffer. B and HL should be set up for a

filename as OUT OPEN, unless B=0, in which case the first file is read. DE must point to the buffer area. If carry=1, zero=0 returned, the file was successfully opened. Other information returned: HL=header address, DE=data location, BC=length and A=file type; all are taken from tape.
BC83 IN DIRECT Loads the file. HL should contain the address to place the file. If O.K., carry=1, zero=0.
BC7A IN CLOSE Closes the file. Returns carry true if O.K.

Note that if you have a disk drive, the cassette calls will normally be overwritten with routines that use the disk drive — all the above should work with disks.

Sound

BCA7 RESET

Clears all queues and silences the sound chip. Corrupts AF, BC, DE and HL.

Using the sound manager is a complex affair, and of specialised interest. The simplest way to make a beep is to print a CHR\$(7), the BELL control code, with TXT OUTPUT (BB5A).

Kernel Routines

These are mainly concerned with interrupts and *events*. Two routines which may be of general use are listed below.

BD0D	TIME PLEASE	Returns the current value of the timer in DEHL, a four-byte count in units of 1/300th of a second. Preserves other registers. Note that the timer is interrupt-driven: disabling the
BD10	TIME SET	interrupts will stop the count. Sets the timer count to the value held in DEHL. Corrupts AF.
The Mad	chine pack	
BD19	WAIT FLYBACK	Waits for a video flyback pulse. Useful for synchronising graphics with the video signal

thereby avoiding flickering effects.BD2BPRINT CHARSends the value in A to the Centronics printer

port. Bit 7 of A is ignored. On return, if carry=1 then all went OK. If carry=0 then the routine 'timed out': i.e. the printer was busy for over 0.4 secs. A is corrupted.

BD34 SOUND REG

Sets a register of the AY-38912 PSG. A should hold the register number, C the data. Corrupts AF, BC. Useful for talking directly to the PSG.

If you intend writing a routine that will reside in ROM, or wish to make use of interrupts, you will need to study the full firmware specification with care. For our purposes, however, the above information, plus that given in later chapters, allows you to use most of the Amstrad's hardware with confidence.

CHAPTER 4 Machine Code Number Sorting

The main advantages of keeping data in a computer are the speed with which a specific item can be found, and the ability to sort items into a particular order. The stock control of a warehouse, or the membership records of a large organisation are examples of applications that spring to mind, but more humble tasks are equally suitable: keeping an address book that allows you to print envelopes for this year's Christmas cards, or cataloguing collections alphabetically, chronologically or even by value.

For general applications you could purchase a database program that will fulfill your needs, but writing your own program gives you the opportunity to match it to precise requirements, and also allows you to expand the program as you become aware of special circumstances. BASIC is a perfectly suitable language in which to write the main body of your program. Inputting information, saving and loading from tape and displaying records on the screen can all be handled quickly enough, but BASIC is not nearly as fast as machine code when it comes to sorting data. This chapter presents a number of routines that will sort BASIC variable arrays into order with an astonishing saving of time. The techniques can easily be applied to data that is not held by BASIC, so writers of pure assembly language will also find them of use.

Sorting methods

Before presenting the first routine, I think a look at how we would sort an array using BASIC will be of benefit. The method is the same as we will use for our first machine code sort. The simplest way to sort data is to use a method, or algorithm, called a *bubble sort*. This rather picturesque name is meant to conjure up a vision of higher valued items rising to the top of an array as we process it.

The human approach

If you were to give a person a hand of playing cards, they might put them into order by searching through for the card of lowest value. When they had ascertained which of the cards this was, they would remove it from its current

position and place it at the end of the hand. They would then scan the remaining cards to discover which one is now the lowest and, when found, that card would be placed alongside the card first removed. Each time the search of the remaining cards is successfully completed, the number of sorted cards grows and the residue gets smaller. Finally, the hand will be in the correct order.

Of course, human intuition would play a large part in the sorting of a hand of cards. For example, by knowing that a card has the lowest value we could place it as soon as it is found or we might recognise that a group of cards is already in order.

The computer approach

To imitate most of the short cuts a human might take would involve some very complex programming. The bubble sort is a simple method that a computer can easily handle, while more advanced algorithms can exploit a computer's strengths and minimise the effect of its weakness.

Look at the Integer Sort Demo program, Program 4.1. Lines 1160 to 1230 make up a BASIC bubble sort routine. From this you can see the technique that we will also employ in the first machine code sorting routine.

Program 4.1

- 1010 REM ** Integer Sort Demo. **
- 1020 REM *********************************
- 1030 GOSUB 8000
- 1040 WHILE 1:SIZE=0
- 1050 WHILE SIZE<1
- 1060 CLS:INPUT "Size of array";TMP%
- 1070 SIZE=TMP%-1
- 1080 WEND
- 1090 DIM STORE% (SIZE), SORT% (SIZE)
- 1100 FOR VALUE=0 TO' SIZE
- 1110 STORE%(VALUE)=32768-RND*65535
- 1120 NEXT VALUE
- 1130 GOSUB 2000
- 1140 PRINT "BASIC bubblesort first please wait."
- 1150 START=TIME
- 1160 FOR PASS=SIZE TO 1 STEP-1
- 1170 FOR COMP= 0 TO PASS-1
- 1180 IF SORT% (COMP)>SORT% (COMP+1) THEN 1220
- 1190 TMP%=SORT%(COMP)

```
1200
      SORT%(COMP)=SORT%(COMP+1)
1210 SORT%(COMP+1)=TMP%
1220 NEXT COMP
1230 NEXT PASS
1240 BASDUR=TIME-START
1250 PRINT "BASIC bubblesort took ", BASDUR/300;" seconds
1260 GOSUB 3000:GOSUB 2000
1270 PRINT "SortInt next - please wait"
1280 START=TIME
1290 CALL HIMEM+1.@SORT%(0),SIZE+1
1300 SIDUR=TIME-START
1310 GOSUB 3000
1320 PRINT "BASIC bubblesort took ",BASDUR/300;" seconds
1330 PRINT "SortInt took ", SIDUR/300;" seconds"
1340 PRINT "Another array? (Y/N)
1350 TMP$=INKEYS:IF TMPS="" THEN 1350
1360 IF TMP$<>"Y" AND TMP$<>"y" THEN END
1370 ERASE STORE%, SORT%
1380 WEND
2010 REM **
             Copy Array
                             **
2030 FOR VALUE=0 TO SIZE
2040 SORT% (VALUE) = STORE% (VALUE)
2050 NEXT VALUE
2060 RETURN
3010 REM **
                             **
             Print Array
3030 PRINT "Do you want to see the results? (Y/N)"
3040 TMP$=INKEY$:IF TMP$="" THEN 3040
3050 IF TMP$<>"Y" AND TMP$<>"y" THEN RETURN
3060 PRINT 'Old array', , "New array"
3070 FOR VALUE=0 TO SIZE
3080 PRINT STORE% (VALUE), SORT% (VALUE)
3090 NEXT VALUE
3100 RETURN
8010 REM ** Code Loading Routine
                             **
8030 RESTORE:READ TOT:TLY=1
8040 FOR CHK=HIMEM+1 TO HIMEM+TOT STEP 8
```

```
8050
     SUM=0
8060
     FOR BLK=0 TO 7
8070 READ B$:TMP=VAL("&"+B$)
8080
      SUM=SUM+TMP
8090
      IF TMP<>PEEK (CHK+BLK) THEN TLY=0
8100 NEXT BLK
8110 READ TMP: IF TMP=SUM THEN 8130
8120 PRINT "Data error in block ":(CHK-HIMEM)8+1:STOP
8130 NEXT CHK
8140 IF TLY THEN RETURN
8150 RESTORE: READ TOT: MEMORY HIMEM-TOT
8160 FOR ADR=HIMEM+1 TO HIMEM+TOT STEP 8
8170 FOR BLK=0 TO 7
8180 READ BS:POKE ADR+BLK,VAL("&"+B$)
8190 NEXT BLK:READ TMP
8200 NEXT ADR
8210 RETURN
-
9010 REM **
                 SortInt Data
9030 DATA 104
9040 DATA DD,4E,00,DD,46,01,50,59,760
9050 DATA DD,6E,02,DD,66,03,23,7E,820
9060 DATA C6,80,77,23,23,1B,7A,B3,843
9070 DATA 20,F5,0B,C5,DD,6E,02,DD,1039
9080 DATA 66,03,54,5D,13,13,1A,96,496
9090 DATA 13,23,1A,9E,38,10,C5,46,577
9100 DATA 1A,77,78,12,18,28,46,1A,449
9110 DATA 77.78.12.13.23.C1.23.13.558
9120 DATA 0B, 79, B0, 20, E1, C1, 0B, 79, 890
9130 DATA B0.20, D0, DD, 5E, 00, DD, 56, 1038
9140 DATA 01, DD, 6E, 02, DD, 66, 03, 23, 695
9150 DATA 7E, D6, 80, 77, 23, 23, 1B, 7A, 806
9160 DATA B3,20,F5,C9,00,00,00,00,657
```

The method comprises two loops. The outer loop begins by subjecting the whole array to the inner loop, on the assumption that nothing is in order. The inner loop begins at the start of the array and compares the first and second items: if the first is lower than the second then they are swapped over. This inner compare loop then proceeds to perform the same operation on the second and third items and continues until it has compared (and swapped if necessary) all the adjacent items in the unsorted section of the array, which

on the first pass is the whole array. At the end of this process we can guarantee that the last item in the section was the lowest value found: on the first pass of the inner loop, we have created a sorted section consisting of one item, the last one.

The second time that the outer loop subjects the array to the compare loop it does not include the last item, the third time it can ignore the last two items, and so on. For each pass the sorted section becomes one item larger, the unsorted section one item smaller. Eventually, the number of items in the unsorted section is reduced to one, which, as all the other items were of a lower value, must be the highest.

That is the principle behind a bubble sort, and when programmed in BASIC it seems quite neat and compact. Indeed, sorting a dozen or so items into order can be done quickly, but as we increase the number of items in the array things begin to slow down dramatically. For each extra item added to the array, not only is an extra inner, or compare loop required, but that loop is one comparison, and potential swap, longer. The mathematics of the situation are such that multiplying the size of an array by ten multiplies the time required to sort it by one hundred.

Integer array sorting

There is no better way of showing how bubble sorts slow down with increased array size than by a practical demonstration. Type in Program 4.1 and save it, as you will need to modify it to test further routines in this chapter. The program compares a sort programmed in BASIC with a machine code version, the listing of which is given in Source listing 4.1. Both methods sort an array of integer values into high to low order. Integer variables (defined with the % symbol) are whole numbers in the range -32768 to +32767, and therefore only two bytes of RAM are required to store each value. They are the simplest type of BASIC variable, and so a good place to start.

Source code listing 4.1

	120 ; Requ	s a B ires	the addres	ger array into high to low order. ss of the first element and the y to be passed by BASIC.
				nt - corrupts registers AF, BC, DE, HL.
DD4E00	150 SORTI	LD	C,(ÌX+0)	;Get length of array into BC and DE.
DD4601	160	LD	B,(IX+1)	
50	170	LD	D,B	
59	180	LD	E,C	
DD6E02	190	LD	L,(IX+2)	;Point HL to first item in array.
DD6603	200	LD	H,(IX+3)	
23	210	INC	HL.	;Point to MSB of value.
7E	220 UNSGD	LD	A,(HL)	;This loop converts the array from

C680 77 23 23 1B 7A B3	230 240 250 260 270 280 290			;signed to unsigned numbers.
20F5 0B C5 DD6E02 DD6603	300 310 320 PASS 330 340	DEC BC PUSH BC LD L,		;Set BC to one less than array size. ;Save outer loop count. ;Point HL to first item.
54 5D 13 13	350 360 370 380	LD D, LD E, INC DE INC DE	H L	;Point DE to second item.
1A 96 13 23 1A	390 NEXT 400 410 420 430	SUB (H INC DE INC HL		;Compare adjacent items
9E 3810 C5 46 1A	440 450 460 470 480	SBC A, JR C, PUSH BC LD B,	(HL) DONE?	;If no swap, jump to DONE? ;We will use B as a temporary store. ;Swap over MSBs.
77 78 12 1B 2B	490 500 510 520 530	LD A,	E),A	;Swap over LSBs.
46 1A 77 78 12	540 550 560 570 580	LD B, LD A, LD (H LD A,	(HL) (DE) L),A B	
12 13 23 Cl	590 600 610	LD (D INC DE INC HL POP BC		;Restore pointers. ;Recover.counter.
23 13 0B	620 DONE? 630 640	INC HL INC DE DEC BC		;Point to next items. ;Count minus one.
79 BO 20E1	650 660 670	LD A, OR B		;Check for zero. ;If not end of count, repeat NEXT.
C1 0B 79	680 690 700	POP BC DEC BC LD A,		;Retrieve outer loop count. ;Count minus one. ;Check for zero.
80 20D0 DD5E00 DD5601 DD6E02	710 720 730 740 750	LD E, LD D,	,PASS (IX+0) (IX+1) (IX+2)	;If not end of count, jump to PASS. ;This section returns the array to ;its original form.

DD6603 760 23 770 7E 780 SIGND D680 790 77 800 23 810 23 820 1B 830 7A 840 B3 850 20F5 860 C9 870	LD INC LD SUB LD INC INC DEC LD OR JR RET	H,(IX+3) HL A,(HL) # 80 (HL),A HL HL DE A,D E NZ,SIGND
---	--	--

The BASIC program

Before we run the program and then examine the machine code, have a look at the BASIC. Please take particular note of the last section, after line 8000 it is the code loading routine that we will use for all our BASIC programs. At a later stage you will probably wish to use an assembler to create machine code, but for now the BASIC loader will suffice.

Program 4.1 begins by calling the code loading routine at line 8000, which installs the machine code above a lowered HIMEM location. The main program then asks for an array size and sets up two arrays. One, STORE%, is loaded with random numbers; the other, SORT%, is the array that is acted upon by both the BASIC and the machine code sorting routines. The contents of STORE% are copied into SORT% and a note made of the timer value. The BASIC bubble sort then takes place, and the time taken calculated and stored. The subroutine beginning at line 3000 is called, which gives you the chance to compare the contents of STORE% with the newly sorted SORT%. Next, the original state of SORT% is restored by copying STORE% into it (subroutine, line 2000), the timer value noted and the machine code sorting routine called. The duration of the sort is calculated; you are given the opportunity of studying the effect of SortInt and the relative times of the two methods are then displayed. Finally, you are asked if you wish to repeat the whole process.

Using the integer sort demonstration

When you have entered and safely saved the program, RUN it. There will be a pause while the machine code is checked, and if you have made an error when entering the DATA statements it will be at this point that you will normally be informed. I say normally because the method used to check the data is not completely foolproof. It is possible for two errors within the same block of data to cancel each other out, so if the machine code routine crashes or does not work as described then this may be the cause. For this reason, as well as the possibility of a power cut, it is always wise to save programs as soon as they are entered.

If the code is O.K. then it will be loaded above HIMEM. The next stage is for the program to ask you how large an array you wish to sort; to begin with, try 50 items. The BASIC sort should take about 14 seconds: the machine code will do the same job in about 0.07 of a second — 200 times faster! Try a few arrays of larger sizes to see how the speed of the sort decreases dramatically. Up to a certain point the time saved by using machine code will be in the same proportion, but with very large arrays BASIC will slow down even more, as it will often have to perform the 'garbage collection' required to remove out-of-date variables each time that it runs out of variable space.

You use the routine with the BASIC CALL command. In the demo program the machine code starts at HIMEM+1, and you can see from line 1280 that two parameters are required: the first (@SORT% (0) in the program) passes the address of the first element of the array you wish to sort, the second (SIZE+1) gives the number of elements, counting from one (so if your array has, say, 6 items, 6 is passed as the second parameter).

The use of SortInt (the name I have given the routine) is not restricted to the above BASIC program. To include lines 8000 onwards in any other program and a GOSUB 8000 at the start of the program is the simplest way to install the routine, but it will be quicker if you save the code as a binary file and load it into memory from cassette or disk. You may load it anywhere sensible: the code is completely relocatable. If you are not sure exactly how to do this you will find an example in Chapter 6.

And so to the machine code itself. The routine begins, at assembler line 150, by fetching the length value passed by BASIC. Parameters that have been sent by the CALL command can be found in a reserved area of memory, the first byte of which is pointed to by the IX register; they are in the reverse order to that of the list following the CALL, so that, as the length is the last parameter passed by BASIC, it follows that we will find the 16-bit length of the array at addresses IX and IX+1. This is loaded into BC, which is to serve as the outer loop counter, and also into DE. HL is filled with the second parameter, the address of the first item of the array, and then incremented so that it points to the most significant byte (MSB) of that item.

Handling Signed numbers

Integer array values are stored in the same manner as Z80 16-bit numbers, that is, low byte first, but there is the complication of negative numbers. These are held as 16-bit two's complement values: &FFFF is -1, &FFFE is -2 and so on. If we were to compare the numbers as they stand, some means

of recognising the numbers were negative would be needed; unless we did so, $8000 \ (-32768 \ decimal)$ would appear to be higher than 7FFF (+32767 decimal). A quick method is to add 8000 hex to all the values before we try to sort them, as this gives all the values the correct relationship. 8000 becomes 0000 (using 16-bit arithmetic means we lose the overflow): 0001 becomes 8001; and 7FFF takes on the value FFFF. When we have sorted the numbers we can restore them to their original value by subtracting 8000 hex.

Lines 220 to 300 are the instructions that perform the conversion. DE is used as a counter: each value has &80 added to its MSB (there is no point in adding 00 to the LSB), the pointer in HL is incremented to point to the MSB of the next value, and then DE is decremented and tested to see if it has become zero. If it has not, the unsigned loop (i.e. the loop for converting the values to unsigned numbers) continues.

Note how we test DE, setting the Z flag if it is zero so that JR NZ can be used — it is a common mistake to forget that decrementing register pairs does not affect the flags. More often than not this works to the programmer's advantage, but in this case it means we must use LD A,D and then OR E to set the Z flag if DE has reached zero.

With the array converted to an easily comparable form, we enter the outer loop after decrementing BC so that it equals the length of the array minus one. This outer loop counter is saved on the stack, although its value, left in BC, will also be used as the initial value of the inner loop counter. HL is pointed to the low byte of the first item, DE to the second.

Now the inner loop begins. The byte at address (HL) is subtracted from that at (DE). The result is discarded, but the value of the carry flag (showing if a 'borrow 256' was generated) will be carried over to the next subtraction. The pointers are incremented to point to the MSBs of the two values; this shows two of the oddities of Z80 code in their true light. In contrast to when we wished to know if DE had been decremented to zero (line 300), here we are thankful that the flags are not altered by the INC register pair instructions. Secondly, if we are working 'low to high' through a block of two-byte numbers, the advantage of the way the Z80 stores 16-bit numbers is shown if they were stored in the order MSB-LSB we would have to juggle with the pointer in HL so as to extract the low byte first.

The next stage (lines 430-440) is to SBC (subtract with carry) the byte at (HL) from that at (DE), thereby taking into account the posibility of a 'borrow 256' being generated by the LSB subtraction. After this instruction, the carry flag will represent a true comparison between the two values. If it is set, then the first value is greater than the second, so no swap is required and line 450 causes the next stage, the swapping of the values, to be skipped over.

Swapping the values

In order to swap over the two values we need some extra storage space. The quickest way to gain a register is to push the contents of BC (at this stage the inner loop counter) onto the stack and retrieve them later. Other methods that may be considered include using IY, but index register instructions are long-winded both in time and bytes.

The operation between lines 470 and 610 may seem a little cumbersome at first glance but the instructions are only one byte in length, and most only take 4 clock cycles to perform. First, the byte from (HL) is stored in B (LD B,(HL)). We can now fetch the byte from (DE) and put it at (HL) with the instructions LD A,(DE) and LD (HL),A. The old value that was at (HL), now safely stored in B, can be loaded into the address (DE) with LD A,B and LD (DE),A. (Note how the lack of a LD (DE),B instruction means that we have to transfer the value to A.) Having swapped over the MSBs, the pointers are decremented, the LSBs swapped in the same manner, and the pointers restored.

The routine reaches assembler line 620, label DONE?, having compared, and swapped if necessary, one pair of adjacent items. This is the end of the inner loop. HL and DE are pointed to the next pair of variables, and then we decrement the inner loop counter and test for zero. If zero is reached we have completed the inner loop, otherwise the routine jumps back to the NEXT label.

The outer loop

Remember that in line 320 we saved the outer loop counter on the stack. The inner loop has exhausted its counter. We POP BC from the stack, so B now contains the outer loop counter. The bubble sort demands that we repeat the inner loop one time less than there are items to be sorted, and it is this function that the outer loop controls. For example, if the array held 5 items, the inner loop would need to be repeated four times. On the first pass the inner loop needs to process all the items, so its counter needs to start at 4. When we retrieve the outer loop counter, it is decremented; if it has not reached zero, then another pass is required. If we now jump back to the instruction where the outer counter is saved on the stack, we can use the outer counter as the new starting value for the inner loop. The inner loop counter is therefore loaded with diminishing values for each pass, which it takes from the outer loop counter.

Ending the routine

When, eventually, zero is reached by the outer loop counter, all that remains

is to return the array to its original form by converting the array contents back to signed numbers. HL and DE are reloaded from the parameter area and lines 780-860 (the signed loop) reverse the process of the unsigned loop (lines 220-300). Finally the RET instruction takes us back to BASIC.

What do you do if you want to sort an array in the reverse order? No problem — to modify SortInt to work the other way round you only need to change one byte. Line 450 holds the key: JR C,DONE? (38 10). This is the condition test that bypasses the swap section of the routine. At this point in the routine the carry flag will be set if the first value is greater than the second, which will *not* cause a swap. By changing line 450 to JR NC,DONE? (30 10) then a swap will be carried out of the item is greater than the second, resulting in the whole sort working in the opposite direction.

The bubble sort is capable of a simple enhancement that can speed up the sorting of arrays which are already nearly sorted. If the inner loop were to process a whole pass without having to swap any items, this would be an indication that the array was in order. A flag can be set at the start of the inner loop, and reset if a swap occurs. If the outer loop detects that the flag has remained set, it knows that the array is sorted. You may like to add this check to the above routine — it will test your ingenuity as there is no obvious place in which to store the flag.

Sorting floating-point arrays

The next routine is designed to sort an array of real numbers — the name used to define numbers that have both integer and fractional parts — sometimes known as *floating point* numbers. In order to represent these, Locomotive BASIC uses five bytes. The format is capable of storing numbers in the range 2.9E-39 to 1.7E+38 to nine-digit accuracy.

Obviously, comparing two blocks of five bytes will take longer than comparing integer variables, and swaps will take longer too. It is time to refine our sorting technique a little; a small modification to the algorithm will reduce the number of swaps we need to perform by a considerable amount. This new method is called a *delayed replacement sort*. There are more advanced methods available, such as the Shell-Metzner algorithm, but these only come into their own with quite large arrays, and may even be slower for small ones. Programming them in BASIC is worthwhile. The extra complexity of the machine code versions is unlikely to pay dividends until array size approaches the capacity of your computer.

As a bubble sort progresses, there are a lot of swaps that are redundant. If one item is of a lower value than, say, the five items above it in the array, it will change places with each in turn. The delayed replacement sort avoids this by comparing the first item with subsequent values until it finds a value with which a swap is *not* required. It then notes the address of this new value as the lowest it has found to date, and continues its search, updating the lowest value address each time it finds a lower value. Only when the end of the unsorted section of the array is reached are the values swapped over — the lowest value found is exchanged with the last unordered item, the size of the unordered area is reduced by one, and then this comparison loop is repeated until the whole array is sorted.

This method is much closer to my earlier description of the way cards can be ordered. As a basis for a machine code routine it has the drawback of being more complex to program, but it is nevertheless feasible, and the speed gained compensates for the extra work required to handle real numbers: sorting a real array using the delayed replacement method in machine code takes about twice as long as a SortInt spends on an integer array.

Real sort demonstration

Program 4.2 is the data required to load the machine code. We will use the BASIC from the integer program, 4.1. You must change the array names so that real arrays are used (that is, delete the % suffix used for integer numbers, and if you wish, add a ! suffix). To give a proper test, change the random number generator so that it gives a greater range.

Load Program 4.1 and make the required changes: delete lines 9000-9160 and replace them with Program 4.2.Save and then RUN the new program, SortReal Demo. If the data statements are O.K. then you will be able to test the new routine against a suitably modified bubble sort, or if you wish you can write a BASIC DR routine. It would be a good test of your understanding of the principle to do this — convert the machine code to BASIC!

The format of real numbers

Before we look at the machine code, I must describe how Locomotive BASIC uses the five bytes to represent floating point numbers. One byte represents the scale of the number and the others give the fractional part. To explain this let me give a simplified view first; the value 1117 can be written as 1.117 * (10 to the power of 3). One byte of the floating point representation would hold the (10 to the power of 3) scaling value (called the 'exponent'), while the other bytes would store the .117 (called the 'mantissa').

The order in which the bytes are stored are the four mantissa bytes, least significant first, followed by the exponent. The most significant of the

mantissa bytes (the fourth) has its seventh bit used for indicating the sign — if set then the number is negative.

I said that the above description was simplified; if you look at the values

Program 4.2
9000 REM ***********************************
9001 REM ** SortReal Data
9002 REM ***********************************
9010 DATA 128
9020 DATA DD,4E,00,DD,46,01,0B,C5,799
9030 DATA 01,04,00,DD,6E,02,DD,66,661
9040 DATA 03,09,54,5D,09,EB,2B,C1,669
9050 DATA C5,C5,D5,E5,1A,AE,17,30,1107
9060 DATA 04,1A,17,18,2B,23,7E,A7,448
9070 DATA 28,F7,13,1A,A7,20,06,2B,580
9080 DATA 7E,17,3F,18,1B,1A,96,20,471
9090 DATA 12,01,FC,FF,EB,09,EB,09,1014
9100 DATA 06,04,1A,96,23,13,1A,9E,424
9110 DATA 10, FA, 17, 2B, 46, 1F, A8, 17, 624
9120 DATA E1, D1, 30, 02, 62, 6B, C1, 0B, 893
9130 DATA 78, B1, 28, 0A, C5, 01, 05, 00, 550
9140 DATA EB,09,EB,C1,18,B3,13,23,929
9150 DATA 06,05,1A,4E,77,79,12,2B,416
9160 DATA 1B,10,F7,C1,0B,78,B1,20,823
9170 DATA 8E,C9,00,00,00,00,00,343

. .

actually stored, you will find that they are somewhat more complex. First, the exponent byte gives a scaling value to the base two, and in order to be able to express both large and small values takes a mid-point in its range (81 hex) to define an exponent of 1. Numbers with this exponent will therefore fall in the range 1 to just under 2. An exponent of 82 puts the value in the range 2 to just under 4; 83 gives 4 to just under 8 and so on. Going down the scale, 80 dictates a value between .5 and just under 1, 7F gives .25 to just under .5. The mantissa part of the number gives the fractional part within the range specified by the exponent. Thus a mantissa of 0000 hex and exponent of 81 represents 1; mantissa 4000, exponent 81 equals 1.5; mantissa 6000 exponent 81 equals 1.75.

To demonstrate how real numbers are stored, I have included a short BASIC program which will allow you to explore the system. Program 4.3 prints out the five bytes of any floating point number that you care to enter. The values given are in hexadecimal. If you spend some time with the program you should be able to estimate floating point representations and then check your guess!

There are two important points to remember about real numbers. The use of bit 7 of the fourth byte to represent the sign of the value means the mantissa is only a 15-bit value; and zero is treated as a special case. It always has an exponent and mantissa of 0, but as no other value has an exponent of zero, this is all that needs to be tested to check for a zero value.

```
Program 4.3
101 REM **
                    Real Numbers Demo
110 MODE 1: ZONE 5
120 WHILE 1
130 INPUT "Number": A!
140 PRINT "Number stored as the following:---"
150 PRINT.
160 \text{ FOR } v = TO 4
170 PRINT HEX(PEEK(y+@!)),
180 NEXT v
190 PRINT:PRINT " (____ Mantissa";
200 PRINT "____) Exponent":PRINT
210 WEND
```

SortReal — a floating-point sorting routine

Our new machine code routine has much the same structure as SortInt, in that the outer and inner loops perform similar tasks. Despite the extra complexity involved, SortReal is longer by only 20 or so instructions than SortInt, although some speed potential has been sacrificed in order to keep the size down. When writing a routine, you should always bear in mind the relative importance of speed and size to your particular application.

SortReal (Source listing 4.2) gets off to a simple start. BC is loaded with the length of the array from the IX memory area, which is decremented, thus becoming the outer loop counter.

Source code listing 4.2

۰.	110 120	;Requi	a BAS res tl	he address	rray into high to low order. of the first element and the to be passed by BASIC.
					- corrupts registers AF, BC, DE, HL.
DD4E00	150				;Get length of array into BC.
DD4601	160		LD	$B_{i}(IX+1)$	
OB	170		DEC	BĊ	
C5	180	PASS	PUSH	BC	;Point HL to MS byte of first
010400	190		LD	BC,4	;item, and DE to MS byte of
DD6E02	200		LD	L,(IX+2)	;second item.
DD6603	210		LD	H,(IX+3)	

09 54 5D 09	220 230 240 250	ADD HL,BC LD D,H LD E,L ADD HL,BC	
EB 2B	260	EX DE,HL	
C1	270 280	DEC HL POP BC	
C5 C5	290 300 COMPR	PUSH BC PUSH BC	;Save outer loop counter.
D5	310 COMPR	PUSH DE	;Save inner loop counter.
E5	320	PUSH HL	
1A AE	330 340	LD A,(DE) XOR (HL)	;Test for equal signs.
17	350	RLA	
3004 1A	360 370 MOVON	JR NC,ZERO? LD A,(DE)	;If equal jump to ZERO? ;Put upper number's sign into
17	380	RLA;	carry and then jump to SWAP?
182B 23	390	JR SWAP?	
23 7E	400 ZERO? 410	INC HL LD A,(HL)	;Point to lower number's exponent. ;Test it.
A7	420	AND A	
28F7 13	430 440	JR Z,MOVON INC DE	;If it is zero, jump to MOVON. ;Point to upper number's exponent.
1A	450	LD A,(DE)	;Test it.
A7 2006	460 470	AND A JR NZ, EXPO?	If it is not gove imme to FYDO'
2000 2B	480	JR NZ,EXPO? DEC HL	;If it is not zero, jump to EXPO?
7E	490	LD A,(IIL)	;Put lower number's sign into
17 3F	500 510	RLA ; CCF ;	carry. Invert it and then
181B	520	JR SWAP?	; jump to SWAP?
1A 96	530 EXPO?	LD A,(DE)	;Compare exponents and if not equal
2012	540 550	SUB (HL) JR NZ,MINU?	;jump to MINU?
01FCFF	560	LD BC,#FFFC	;Subtract lower number's mantissa
EB 09	570 580	EX DE,HL ADD HL,BC	; from upper's.
EB	590	EX DE,HL	
09	600	ADD HL, BC	
0604 1A	610 620	LD B,4 LD A,(DE)	
96	630	SUB (HL)	
23	640 MANLP	INC HL	
13 1A	650 660	INC DE LD A,(DE)	
9E	670	SBC A, (HL)	
10FA	680	DJNZ MANLP	
17 2B	690 700 minu?	RLA ; DEC HL	Put MS bit of result into carry.
46	710	LD B,(HL)	; If values are negative, complement
1F A8	720 730	RRA ; XOR B	the carry flag.
17	740	RLA	

E1	750 SWAP?	POP HL	Restore pointers
D1 3002	760 770	POP DE JR NC,NXCM?	;Test if swap possible.
62	780	LD H,D	; If not, point HL to new
6B	790	LD L,E	;"lowest" value.
Cl OB	800 NXCM? 810	POP BC DEC BC	;Test for last comparision.
78	820	LD A,B	, lest for fast comparision.
B1	830	OR C	
280A	840	JR Z, ENDCP	; If it is jump to ENDCP.
C5	850	PUSH BC	
010500	860	LD BC,5	;Point DE to MS byte of next
EB	870	EX DE,HL	;item's mantissa
09	880	ADD HL,BC	
EB	890	EX DE, HL	and the second second from the
Cl	900	POP BC	; and then jump back for the
18B3 13	910 920 ENDCP	JR COMPR INC DE	;next comparison. ;Swap lowest value item found with
23	930 ENDER 930	INC HL	; last item, even if it is itself!
0605	940	LD B,5	
1A	950 XFER	LD A, (DE)	
4E	960	LD C,(HL)	
77	970	LD (HL),A	
79	980	LD A,C	
12	990	LD (DE),A	
2B	1000	DEC HL	
1B	1010	DEC DE	
10F7	1020	DJNZ XFER	
C1	1030	POP BC	;Test if another pass is required.
0B	1040 1050	DEC BC	
78 Bl	1050	LD A,B OR C	
208E	1070	JR NZ,PASS	
C9	1080	RET	

The outer loop begins with lines 180-280, which fetch the address of the first item and use this information to point HL to the fourth byte of the first variable and DE to the fourth byte of the second variable. If you refer back to the description of the real number format, you will see that the fourth byte is the MSB of the digits, and also holds the sign of the number in bit 7.

Note that lines 180 and 280 PUSH and POP the outer loop counter so that we can use BC to add 4 to the addresses fetched.

Also examine the use of EX DE,HL; this one-byte, four-cycle instruction is very handy. It can also be used to alleviate the restriction of only being able to perform arithmetic on the HL pair. Because we can quickly swap the values in DE and HL, perform the arithmetic, and then swap back, DE can be used for instructions that normally work exclusively on HL, with only a two-byte, eight-cycle penalty.

The inner loop

Before we begin the comparison section of our routine, we must retrieve the outer loop counter from the stack and immediately re-save it — this loads BC with a value (diminishing on each pass of the outer loop) for use as the inner loop counter (lines 280-290). Before any work begins, we must take the precaution of saving the inner loop counter and our pointers. The inner loop can be considered as two sections — comparison (330-730) and SWAP? (750-790). As soon as a decision has been made about swapping the values, a jump is made to the SWAP? section. Because this jump can be made at a number of different places we cannot predict where HL and DE will be pointing, which is why we save the pointers.

Comparing values

The first step in the comparison section (lines 300-740) is to compare the signs of the values to be compared. This information is held in bit seven of the fourth byte, which is why we begin by pointing there. Lines 330-360 make a good example of the use of an XOR instruction. In Chapter 3 I explained that the result of an XOR is 1 if two bits are different, otherwise the bit will be reset. By XORing the fourth byte of each variable together, bit 7 of the result will be set if the seventh bits of the bytes compared are different from each other, and therefore the two values are of different signs. If they are not, a jump is made to ZERO?. If they are, then a decision can be made. The sign of the second number is placed into the carry and a jump made to SWAP?. The next test, ZERO? is included because of the special case of representing 0 mentioned above. The first value's mantissa is tested: notice the AND instructions which are all that are required to set the flags. If the test does turn out to be zero, then some byte saving is achieved with a jump back to the label MOVON — the same codes are used to slightly different effect. DE is still pointing to the fourth, signed byte of the second value, and the routine will decide if a swap is required on the basis of the sign (a negative number is less than zero). MOVON puts the sign in the carry and jumps to SWAP? The routine reaches line 440 if the two values have the same sign and the first is not zero. The next test is to see if the second value is zero. Lines 480-500 do this, pointing DE to the exponent and testing for zero. If true, the complement of the first item's sign is put into carry and we jump to SWAP? Lines 530-550 test for equal exponents; if they are unequal then a decision can be made about the swap. After the SUB instruction, the zero flag will be clear if the exponents are unequal, in which case a jump is made to the label MINU?. Note that carry will be set if the exponent at (HL) is larger than that at (DE), and this information is carried forward as the basis of the SWAP? decision.

Let us recap on what the comparison section has dealt with so far. Values of different signs have caused a jump to SWAP?, as has the discovery that either value is zero. The exponents have been compared, and if they were unequal, a jump to MINU? (which is a precursor to the SWAP? section) has been effected. In all the above cases, the carry flag has been set to indicate which value is the higher.

The last stages, lines 560-690, is only reached if the values are of equal sign and exponent, and are not zero. The pointers in HL and DE are set to point to the LSB of the values. The way we go about this may seem a little odd; it is an example of how saving one byte can cause muddle! There is no SUB instruction for register pairs, and if we use SBC we must clear the carry unless we are sure of its state. An alternative is to use ADD, but add a negative, 16-bit number. Two's complement is not just a convention; it actually works. Adding &FFFC has the same effect as subtracting 4, so we can use ADD and ignore the carry. Making machine code compact does not make it easier to follow!

Subtracting 4 from DE and HL leaves them pointing to the first bytes of each value. The routine now prepares for a loop with lines 610-630. If we were only concerned with speed, it would be slightly quicker not to use a loop for this stage; repeating lines 640-670 an extra three times would make the routine eight bytes longer but save 54 clock cycles for each comparison that reached the final test. I have opted for the slower version, but you might want to try the faster method.

Just before the loop, B is loaded with 4 so as to act as a counter, and the first subtraction performed with SUB. The loop then increments the pointers and uses SBC, so that at the end of the loop the two 4-byte values have been compared, with bit 7 of the accumulator reflecting which was the larger. Remember that the original seventh bits of the fourth bytes indicated the sign, and this stage of the comparison would not have been reached if they had been unequal. As each bit 7 was the same, bit 7 of the result will faithfully reflect any borrow from bit 6 of the subtraction. A borrow would indicate that the value at (HL) is bigger than that at (DE); so bit 7 is rotated into the carry to be used to decide whether a swap is required.

The SWAP? section

This can be entered at one of two points: MINU? or SWAP?. The first (lines 700-740), is reached by jumps from the comparison section that have not tested the sign of the values. The carry tells us which value is the greater, and we know the signs are the same, but the routine must take account of the fact that negative values need to be placed in the reverse order to positive ones: -2 is higher than -3, while +2 is lower than +3.

The sign of the values is transferred from bit 7 of (HL) to bit 7 of B. The carry is then rotated into bit 7 of A. XOR B has the effect of inverting the original value of the carry if the values are negative. The result is then rotated back into the carry.

SWAP? (lines 750-790), having restored the original pointers, is a very simple test, as we have arranged things in such a way that the need to swap items is dictated by the carry. If you wish to change the order of the sort then change line 770 to JR C,NXCM? (38 02).

The delayed replacement principle now comes into effect, because if a swap is not required, the HL pointer is loaded with a new address, that of the lower value — no swap actually occurs until the end of the inner loop. Lines 800-840 are the by now familiar end-of-loop instructions, to which a new twist is added. Because we only want to increment the pointer to the second item if we are going to repeat the loop, line 840 jumps out of the loop when BC reaches zero but before we alter DE. If the loop is to continue, we add 5 to DE, pointing it to the next item, and then perform an unconditional jump to COMPR.

The tail end of the inner loop begins at ENDCP. The lowest item found during the last pass is swapped with the last unsorted item by a loop which has 5 iterations, one for each byte, using C as a temporary buffer. Even if HL is pointing to the same variable as DE, which is to say that the lowest item found was also the last, the swap occurs — the number of times that this is likely to happen is probably quite small, so it is arguable as to whether a check, although easy to program, is worth the extra bytes.

The outer loop

The end of the routine recovers the outer loop counter, decrements and tests it, and jumps back to PASS if the inner loop still needs to be applied to the array.

The most important principle demonstrated by this routine is that the careful use of the flags register can make for economical programming. All the tests are arranged so that the carry flag reflects the order in which the values should be placed. Rotate is very handy for testing the most significant bit of a byte (or indeed the last significant), while XOR can be very powerful in certain circumstances.

CHAPTER 5 Sorting String Arrays

We have sorted integer and real arrays — in this chapter it is the turn of string arrays. The first machine code routine, SortString, will handle single-dimension arrays of character strings. Later we will look at how to sort string arrays which are multi-dimensional.

Program 4.3 gives the new set of data statements for SortString, to be inserted into Program 4.1. Again, you must make a number of changes to the names of the variables, and there is a small challenge to your BASIC programming skills in the creation of random strings, particularly if you make them of random length. Failing this, and it is perhaps a better test of the routine, you can read strings from data statements.

Program 5.1
9000 REM ***********************************
9001 REM ** SortString Data ** 9002 REM ************************************
9002 REM ***********************************
9010 DATA 88
9020 DATA DD,4E,00,DD,46,01,0B,C5,799
9030 DATA DD,6E,02,DD,66,03,54,5D,836
9040 DATA 13,13,13,C5,D5,E5,1A,4F,801
9050 DATA 0C,46,04,EB,23,7E,23,66,619
9060 DATA 6F,EB,23,7E,23,66,6F,A7,922
9070 DATA 05,28,0A,3F,0D,28,06,1A,203
9080 DATA 96,13,23,28,F3,E1,D1,38,977
9090 DATA 02,62,6B,C1,0B,78,B1,28,748
9100 DATA 05,13,13,13,18,CD,06,03,300
9110 DATA 1A,4F,7E,12,71,13,23,10,432
9120 DATA F7,C1,OB,78,B1,20,B0,C9,1157

String arrays in BASIC

Before looking at *Source Listing 5.1*, we need to know how BASIC strings are stored in an array. Each dimensioned string array has its own string descriptor block, holding three bytes for each element. The first byte gives the length of

Source code listing 5.1

		s a BASIC sing	le dimensioned string array into		
		;alphabetic order.			
			ss of the first element and the		
	140 ; leng	th of the array	y to be passed by BASIC.		
			nt - corrupts registers AF, BC, DE, HL.		
DD4E00	160	LD C, (IX+0)	;Get length of array into BC.		
DD4601	170	LD B,(IX+1))		
0B C5	180 190 PASS	DEC BC	Sam autor loop counter		
DD6E02	200 PASS	PUSH BC	;Save outer loop counter.		
DD6603	210	LD L,(IX+2) LD H,(IX+3)			
54	220	LD D,H	;Point DE to second string		
5D	230	LD E,L	;descriptor.		
13	240	INC DE	, descriptor.		
13	250	INC DE			
13	260	INC DE			
C5	270 COMPR		;Save inner loop counter.		
D5	280	PUSH DE	, our inter roop coulder		
E5	290	PUSH HL			
1A	300	LD A,(DE)	;Load C with length of upper string.		
4F	310	LD C,A			
0C	320	INC C			
46	330	LD B,(HL)	;Load B with length of lower string.		
04	340	INC B			
EB	350	EX DE,HL			
23	360	INC HL	;Point DE to upper string.		
7E	370	LD A,(HL)			
23	380	INC HL			
66	.390	LD H,(HL)			
6F	400	LD L,A			
EB	410	EX DE,HL	Deint III to lower string		
23 7E	420 430	INC HL	;Point HL to lower string.		
23	430	LD A,(HL) INC HL			
66	440	INC HL LD H,(HL)			
6F	460	LD L,A			
A7	470	AND A	;Clear carry flag.		
05	480 CLOOP		;Decrement lengths, and if either		
280A	490	JR Z,SWAP?	;reach zero, set the carry flag		
3F	500	CCF ;	accordingly and jump to SWAP?		
0D	510	DEC Ć			
2806	520	JR Z,SWAP?			
1A	530	LD A,(DE)	;Compare characters from strings,		
96	540	SUB (HL)	; increment string pointers, and if		
13	550	INC DE	;the characters were equal, jump		
23	560	INC HL	;back to CLOOP.		
28F3	570	JR Z,CLOOP			
El	580 SWAP?		;Restore pointers		
D1	590	POP DE	m		
3802	600	JR C,NXCM?	;Test if swap possible.		
62	610	LD H,D	; If not, point IL to new		

6B C1 0B 78 B1	620 630 NXCM? 640 650 660	LD L,E POP BC DEC BC LD A,B OR C	;"lowest" string. ;Test for last comparision.
2805	670 680	JR Z,ENDO	
13 13	690	INC DE INC DE	;Point to next string and jump back ;for the next comparision.
13	700	INC DE	, 101 che nene comparizoitori
18CD	710	JR COMPR	
0603	720 ENDCP	LD B,3	
1A	730 XFDSC	LD A,(DE)	
4F	740	LD C,A	
7E	750	LD A,(HL)	
12	760	LD (DE),A	
71	770	LD (HL),C	
13	780	INC DE	
23	790	INC HL	
10F7	800	DJNZ XFDSC	
C1	810	POP BC	;Test if another pass is required.
0B	820	DEC BC	
78	830	LD A,B	
B1	840	OR C	
2060	850	JR NZ,PAS	S
C9	860	RET	

the string, which explains why BASIC strings can only be 255 characters in length. Bytes two and three hold, in Z80 notation, the address of the start of the string. The actual location of the string will depend on how it was entered — you will find that strings read from data statements will have a descriptor pointing to the BASIC program where the string is held. The practical upshot of all this is that to find a string we look up the address in its descriptor block, and if we want to swap two strings over we only need to swap the three bytes of their respective descriptors.

In a single-dimension array, consisting of say 10 items, the descriptor block will be 30 bytes long. We can find the block with the @ prefix — this will pass the address to our machine code routine. The fact that the strings themselves may be dotted all over RAM is no problem; we can find each one as we need it from its address in the block, and we don't need to change any of the strings themselves. We have all the ingredients to write a sorting routine.

SortString in action

SortString uses the delayed replacement method and is very similar in principle to SortReal. The two essential differences are the comparison section and the simpler code required to swap items — we swap only the descriptors.

The routine begins the outer loop by fetching the length of the string and setting up BC as the outer loop counter. HL is pointed to the first and DE to the second of the descriptors in the array block, and then the inner loop begins. After pushing the register pairs, the lengths of the two strings are placed in B and C, and we reload HL and DE to point not to the descriptors but to the strings themselves.

CLOOP (representing Comparison LOOP, lines 480-570) has three exit points. This is necessary because we need to take the string lengths into acount — ABC must be placed before ABCD. As we examine the individual characters of both strings we will probably find a pair that are not the same; this is one basis of a comparison and forms one of the exits from the loop (line 570). If this does not happen before we reach the end of one of the strings, then the lengths dictate the final order. B and C are used to hold the number of characters left to test, so they are decremented on each pass of CLOOP. The first instructions (lines 480-520) test to see if either has reached zero and exits will occur at lines 490 or 520 if this is the case.

We use the carry to convey information to the next section of the routine. The flag is cleared by line 470; remember that DEC r instructions do not affect the carry, so an exit at line 490 will take a clear carry flag with it. CCF (complement carry flag) is used to set the flag and the counter in register C is decremented. If this causes an exit at line 570 then a set carry flag is passed on.

If the first two tests show that there are characters to be compared (for example, if the first pass of CLOOP revealed that both strings consisted of at least one character), then lines 530-540 are reached. Using subtraction, these compare the ASCII codes of the characters we are currently pointing to — zero will result if they are equal. Before testing for a match, the pointers are incremented so as to point to the next potential characters in the two strings. Now the conditional jump instruction can decide whether the ASCII codes were the same — if they were then we will need to look at further characters (if there are any), so a jump back for another pass is made. Note that if this happens, the carry will be clear for the first stage of CLOOP. If Z is not set, then the characters are different: we pass on to the next stage with carry indicating which character had the higher ASCII code.

SWAP?

Before a decision is made as to whether a swap is required, the addresses of the descriptors are retrieved from the stack. Whichever exit was taken from CLOOP, the carry flag will be set if the second string should be placed before the first, which means we need to swap the descriptors. If carry is not set, HL is loaded with the address of the new 'lowest found so far' string. Lines 630-670 are a very straightforward ending to the inner loop, pointing DE to the next descriptor before jumping back if further comparisons are to be made. The outer loop ends by swapping the lowest string descriptor with the last of the unsorted block; it uses a simple three-pass loop to save bytes. The outer loop counter is then salvaged from the stack and the decision made as to whether a further pass is required.

Using SortString to order an array in Z to A order is possible because of the manner in which CLOOP works — just alter line 600 to JR NC,NXCMP? (30 02).

The three sorting routines described so far in this book are simple and fast methods of sorting arrays of each type of variable available in Locomotive BASIC. Not only can they be included in BASIC programs; they can also be called from other machine code programs, and even modified to sort other areas of data. The CLOOP section of SortString can be lifted out and used as a 'string compare' subroutine for any two ASCII strings provided you match the entry requirements: (B and C with the lengths, DE and HL pointing to the first character of each string).

SortArray — the heart of a database program

The next routine, SortArray, is written for a more specific application, while still demonstrating sorting principles. Its purpose is to give database programs a powerful facility by sorting a two-dimensional string array according to the contents of one of its dimensions.

SortArray can also be instructed to work in either direction. Additionally, simple number handling allows it to sort positive integer values stored as strings in one dimension of the array used for the database (BASE\$).

Database (Program 5.2) is the type of program that can be of great use for home or business purposes. At its simplest level it simulates a file card system, with the added bonus of print-outs, and it has the ability efficiently to sort and

Program 5.2

```
**
1001 REM **
           Database Program
1003 REM ** After a break or error
                          **
1004 REM ** GOTO 1500 to save data
                          **
1010 ZONE 18:MODE 2
1020 WINDOW #0,1,80,3,23
1030 WINDOW #1,1,80,1,1
1040 WINDOW #2,1,80,25,25
1050 PRINT #1, TAB(29); "*** Database Program ***"
1060 GOSUB 8000
```

```
1070 MAXT%=250
1080 INPUT #2,"Load a database (Y/N)";T$
1090 IF TS="Y" OR TS="y" THEN GOSUB 2040:GOTO 1500
1101 REM **
            Set Up New Database
                               **
1110 PRINT #1, TAB(27)"*** Set Up New Database ***"
1120 INPUT #2,"How many fields do you require";F%
1130 F%=F%-1: IF F%>255 OR F%<1 THEN 1120
1140 DIM BASES(MAXI%,F%),NMS(F%)
1150 FOR X=0 TO F%
1160 PRINT"Field ";X+1;" Title -".
1170 PRINT #2,"Title?",:LINE INPUT £2,NM$(X)
1180 PRINT NM$(X)
1190 NEXT X
1200 IM%=-1:GOSUB 5000
1501 REM **
                               **
                  Menu
1510 WHILE 1
1520 RESTORE 10010
1530 PRINT #1, TAB(28); "******* Menu *******
1540 CLS
1550 FOR X=1 TO 6
1560
    READ P$
1570
      PRINT CHR$(10); CHR$(10), P$,, "----";X
1580 NEXT X
1590 PRINT #2, TAB(23); "Press the required function number"
1600 M$=INKEY$:IF M$<"1" OR M$>"6" THEN 1600
1610 CLS
1620 ON VAL(M$) GOSUB 2000,3000,4000,5000,6000,7000
1630 WEND
**
2001 REM **
                Load Data
2010 INPUT #2,"Delete old database (Y/N)";Q$
2020 IF Q$<>"Y" AND Q$<>"y" THEN RETURN
2030 ERASE NMS, BASES
2040 PRINT #1, TAB(28); "***** Loading Data *****"
2050 INPUT #2,''Name of database'';D$
2060 IF D$='''' OR LEN(D$)>8 THEN 2050
2070 CLS #2:LOCATE 1,23
2080 OPENIN D$
2090 INPUT #9, IM%, F%
2090 INPUT £9. IM% F%
2100 DIM NM$(F%), BASE$(MAXI%, F%)
2110 FOR X=0 TO F%
2120 INPUT #9,NM$(X)
2130 NEXT X
```

```
2140 FOR X=0 TO IM%
2150 FOR Y=0 TO F%
     INPUT #9,BASE$(X,Y)
2160
2170 NEXT Y
2180 NEXT X
2190 CLOSEIN
2200 RETURN
Save Data
3001 REM **
                                  **
3010 PRINT #1, TAB(28); "***** Saving Data *****"
3020 INPUT #2, "Name of data to be saved"; D$
3030 IF DS="" OR LEN(D$)>8 THEN 3020
3040 CLS #2:LOCATE 1,23
3050 OPENOUT D$:WRITE #9, IM%, F%
3060 FOR X=0 TO F%
3070 WRITE #9.NMS(X)
3080 NEXT X
3090 FOR X=0 TO IM%
3100 FOR Y=0 TO F%
3110 WRITE #9.BASE$(X.Y)
3120 NEXT Y
3130 NEXT X
3140 CLOSEOUT
3150 RETURN
4001 REM **
                                  **
                Examine Files
4010 PRINT #1,TAB(28);"***** Examine Data *****"
4020 INPUT #2, 'Which file number''; EX%: EX%=EX%-1
4030 PRINT #2, CHR$(243);" Next | "; CHR$(242);" Back | ";
4040 PRINT #2, CHR$(241);" 8 Ahead | * 8 Back | ";
4050 PRINT #2,"COPY - Edit | ENTER - Menu | S - Search";
4060 IF EX%<0 THEN EX%=0
4070 IF EX%>=IM% THEN EX%=IM%
4080 C%=0:GOSUB 7500
4090 TS=INKEYS: IF TS='"' THEN 4090
4100 T^{2}_{\pi}=ASC(TS)
4110 IF T%=13 THEN RETURN
4120 IF T%=224 THEN 4190
4130 IF T%<240 OR T>243 THEN 4090
4140 IF T%=240 THEN EX%=EX%-8
4150 IF T%=241 THEN EX%=EX%+8
4160 IF T%=242 THEN EX%=EX%-1
4170 IF T%=243 THEN EX%=EX%+1
4180 GOTO 4060
4190 PRINT #1, TAB(28); "***** Editing File *****"
4200 INPUT #2, "Which field do you wish to alter"; T%: T%=T%-1
4210 IF T%<0 OR T%>F% THEN 4200
```

```
4220 PRINT #2, "Entry?", :LINE INPUT #2, BASE$(EX%, T%)
4230 C%=0:GOSUB 7500
4240 INPUT #2,"Another field? (Y/N)";T$
4250 IF T$="'Y" OR T$="'y" THEN 4200
4260 PRINT #1.TAB(28); '***** Examine Data *****''
4270 GOTO 4030
5000 REM ********************************
5001 REM **
                                  **
                 Add Files
5002 REM *********************************
5010 PRINT #1, TAB(28); "***** Adding Files *****"
5020 MORE=1
5030 WHILE MORE
5040 IM%=IM%+1
5050 CLS:PRINT'File No. ": IM%+1
5060 FOR X=0 TO F%
     PRINT X+1;" ";NM$(X);" -",
5070
     PRINT #2,"Entry?"
5080
5090
      LINE INPUT #2, BASE$(IM%,X)
5100
      PRINT BASES(IM%,X)
5110 NEXT X
5120 IF IM%>=MAX1% THEN MORE=0
5130 INPUT #2,"Another file (Y/N)";T$
5140 IF TS="N" OR TS="n" THEN MORE=0
5150 WEND
5160 RETURN
6000 REM *********************************
6001 REM **
                 Sort Data
                                  **
6010 PRINT #1, TAB(28); "****** Sort Data ******
6020 INPUT #2,"By which field do you wish to sort?",S%
6030 S%=S%-1: IF S%<0 OR S%>F% THEN 6020
6040 INPUT #2,"Do you wish to sort A to Z? (Y/N)";T$
6050 IF T$="'N" OR T$="n" THEN DR%=1 ELSE DR%=0
6060 PRINT #1. TAB(28);"********* Sorting *******
6070 CALL HIME1+1, @BASE$(0,S%), IM%, F%, @BASE$(0,1), @BASE$(0,0), DR%
6080 RETURN
7001 REM **
                                  **
                  Print Out
7010 PRINT #1,TAB(28);"****** Print Out ******'
7020 INPUT #2,"From file no.";ST
7030 ST=ST-1:IF ST<1 THEN ST=0
7040 INPUT #2,"To file no.";ED
7050 ED=ED-1: IF ED>IM% THEN ED=IM%
7060 C%=8
7070 FOR W=ST TO ED
7080 EX%=W
7090 GOSUB 7500
7100 NEXT W
```

7110 RETURN 7501 REM ** Print File ** 7510 CLS 7520 PRINT #C%, "File No."; EX%+1 7530 FOR X=0 TO F% 7540 PRINT #C%,X+1;" ";NM\$(X);" -",BASE\$(EX%,X) 7550 NEXT X 7560 RETURN 9001 REM ** ** SortArray Data 9010 DATA 232 9020 DATA DD, 5E, 02, DD, 56, 03, DD, 6E, 958 9030 DATA 04, DD, 66, 05, A7, ED, 52, DD, 1039 9040 DATA 75,04,DD,74,05,DD,4E,08,770 9050 DATA DD,46,09,78,B1,C8,C5,DD,1215 9060 DATA 6E,0A,DD,66,0B,54,5D,13,650 9070 DATA 13,13,C5,D5,E5,1A,A7,28,910 9080 DATA 5C,4F,0C,7E,A7,3F,28,55,664 9090 DATA 47,04,EB,23,7E,23,66,6F,719 9100 DATA EB,23,7E,23,66,6F,7E,D6,984 9110 DATA 30, D6, OA, 30, 2F, 1A, D6, 30, 655 9120 DATA D6,0A,30,28,E5,D5,C5,0E,965 9130 DATA 00,7E,D6,30,D6,0A,30,04,664 9140 DATA 0C,23,10,F5,61,C1,C5,41,860 9150 DATA 0E,00,1A,D6,30,D6,0A,30,574 9160 DATA 04,0C,13,10,F5,79,94,C1,758 9170 DATA D1, E1, 20, 11, 05, 28, 0E, 3F, 605 9180 DATA OD,28,0A,1A,96,13,23,28,333 9190 DATA F3,18,02,18,91,E1,D1,17,895 9200 DATA DD, AE, 00, 1F, 38, 02, 62, 6B, 689 9210 DATA C1,0B,78,B1,28,05,13,13,584 9220 DATA 13,18,87,DD,4E,0A,DD,46,778 9230 DATA OB, A7, ED, 42, EB, A7, ED, 42, 1186 9240 DATA DD,4E,02,DD,46,03,09,EB,839 9250 DATA 09, DD, 46, 06, 04, C5, D5, E5, 949 9260 DATA 06,03,1A,4F,7E,12,71,13,390 9270 DATA 23,10,F7,E1,D1,DD,4E,04,1035 9280 DATA DD,46,05,EB,09,EB,09,C1,977 9290 DATA 10,E3,C1,OB,78,B1,20,AB,947 9300 DATA C9.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.201 10001 REM ** ** Menu Data 10010 DATA Load data, Save data, Examine fi 10020 DATA Add data, Sort data, Print data

sift through the information it contains. You can use it as an address book which can list all your contacts that live in any particular town or city. You can use it to catalogue a stamp collection by country of origin, and, in a few moments, re-list the stamps in order of age.

Before we launch into the program let me define the terms that I shall use to describe the database. The information is stored in a two dimensional string array. One dimension of the array has as many elements as there are to be 'fields'; these are the various subheadings such as name, address, age and so on. Therefore, one field will perhaps contain all the surnames of the people in your database array.

The other dimension has as many elements as there are 'files'; each file contains all the fields pertaining to an individual record. One file of the array will contain all the fields — name, address etc. — relevant to a particular person (or perhaps cassette, stamp or whatever you are keeping a record of). Each element is a string of up to 255 characters, each having both a file and field number. Elements with the same field number contain the same type of

data, and elements with the same file number relate to the same record.

The bulk of the program is written in BASIC for two reasons: you will be able to expand and modify it to meet your personal requirements with ease, and Locomotive BASIC is fast enough for most of the program to be useful without resorting to machine code. As I hope you will customise the program to suit you, the following is a commentary on the BASIC.

Database

Lines 1000-1070: Set up the screen display, load the machine code and set MAXI% to 250. This sets the maximum number of files that the program will hold — you may specify a much larger value if you are likely to use short strings or only a few fields.

Lines 1080-1090: Give the opportunity for loading a new set of information from the keyboard, or loading an old database from tape (or disk).

Lines 1120-1140: Ask how many fields are needed and dimension the main and title array accordingly. Note that the first field is numbered 0, so line 1130 subtracts 1 from F%.

Lines 1150-1190: A loop that inputs the title you want for each field — it will tidy up screen display if you keep the titles reasonably short.

Line 1220: IM% is the number of the last file in BASE\$ that holds data. The numbering begins at 0, so -1 is an invalid file. At this point execution is

passed to a subroutine which is also available from the menu (Add data).

Lines 1500-1630: A closed loop to print the menu from data steatements, fetch a valid choice, and GOSUB the required function.

Lines 2000-2170: Fetches a database from a suitable tape or disk file. IM% and F% are read in, new arrays are dimensioned and filled with information from tape or disk.

Lines 3000-3150: Dumps the current database to tape or disk in a form suitable for the LOAD subroutine to read.

Lines 4000-4080: The start of the Examine routine asks which file you wish to begin with (EX%), prints the prompting messages and then uses the Print subroutine to display the first file.

Lines 4090-4100: Fetches a valid response to the prompts.

Lines 4110: If the response is ENTER, return to menu.

Line 4120: If the response is COPY then jump to the edit section.

Lines 4130-4180: Other valid responses change EX% as required and then jump back to 4060, where EX% is made legal, and the new file displayed.

Lines 4190-4270: Gives the chance to change any field of the current file.

Lines 5000-5160: New files are added by eliciting each field from the keyboard. IM% is incremented and compared with MAXI% to ensure we do not overrun the size of the array.

Lines 6000-6080: The subroutine to call SortArray. Note the parameters of the CALL command. It is possible to rewrite this section to allow you to sort only, say, the first 10 files.

Lines 7000-7110: A rudimentary printer driver. It uses the print subroutine. You can expand this subroutine (if you have a printer!) to be more selective.

Lines 7500—7560: This subroutine is called from three places in the program: the examine, print and edit options. It sends the contents of the file number EX% to the channel defined by C%.

Lines 8000-8190: The code loading routine. This. and the following section, can be replaced with a loading operation from tape or disk.

Lines 9000-9280: SortArray in data statements.

Lines 10000 on: The function names for the menu.

Database makes good use of the Amstrad's windowing functions. Two single-line windows at the top and bottom of the screen are used for titles and prompts. Notice that the program always inputs to stream 2, the bottom window; and an oddity of Locomotive BASIC (at least on my CPC 464) means that string prompts included in LINE INPUT commands appear on stream 0, whichever channel you specify. As a result, separate PRINT #2 commands have to be used: if your machine behaves in a more predictable manner then you can save some lines of BASIC.

Using the program is quite simple. The main caution I will give is do plan the number and the titles of fields with care. For example, split names into fore and surnames, and addresses by road, town, etc; this will give many more options when you want to sort data. Numbers may require special treatment, as I will explain when we look at the machine code. Don't be afraid to declare a few extra fields for comments and future expansion — you can give these new names by breaking into BASIC and redefining the appropriate element of TITLE (NM\$).

You may notice that the prompt line of the examine subroutine gives a search option that does not, as yet, work. The next chapter will give a further machine-code routine to implement this option, with the appropriate BASIC additions.

Parameters for SortArray

SortArray uses many more parameters than our previous routines. In the order that they appear above the IX pointer (and therefore the reverse order to that in which they must be declared), they are as follows:

IX+0 and IX+1: the direction of the sort. Bit 0 of (IX+0) is all that is used by the machine code. Passing an even number will initiate an A to Z sort; conversely an odd value forces a Z to A result.

IX+2 and IX+3: the address of element (0,0) of the array.

IX+4 and IX+5: the address of element (0,1) of the array.

IX+6 and IX+7: the number of fields. An eight-bit number is all that can be handled, so 256 is the maximum number of fields possible. There is no reason why SortArray could not handle more fields, but as this seems an unlikely requirement, the restriction allows SortArray to use eight-bit loop counters. Note that fields are numbered in the range 0-255 for the purposes of the machine code and array numbering, although BASIC translates the range to 1-256 for display purposes.

IX+8 and IX+9: the number of files (less one). Note that this need not be the same as the total number of elements dimensioned.

IX+10 and IX+11: the address of the first element in the field on which you wish to sort.

It is worth mentioning that the field and file variables in *Database* (F% and IM%) begin at zero, and the machine code takes this into account.

SortArray in action

Source code listing 5.2 shows SortArray. The same structure as our previous DR sorts is used — outer loop and inner loop. CLOOP, from SortString, is also evident. In fact, the main body of the routine is very similar to SortString, with the added complication of handling strings as numbers.

Source code listing 5.2

	110 120 130 140	;SortArray ;Sorts a BASIC multi-dimensioned string array into ;alphabetic order, or if both strings begin with a ;numerical character, arithmetic order. ;Does not handle negative numbers. ;Direction of sort determined by an entry parameter.				
		;Addresses of field which determines sort, first and				
		;second field, number of fields and items and direction				
		; of sort to be passed by BASIC.				
005500		;Position independent - corrupts registers AF, BC, DE, HL				
DD5E02 DD5603	200	LD E,(IX+2) ;Calculate the distance between $D = D_{1}(X+2)$. Fields and store the result in				
DD5003 DD6E04	210 220					
DD6E04						
	230					
A7	240	AND A				
ED52	250	SBC IIL, DE				
DD7504	260	LD (IX+4), L				
DD7405	270	LD (IX+5),H				
DD4E08	280					
DD4609 78	290	LD B,(IX+9)				
10	300	LD A,B				

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

B1 C8 C5 DD6E0A DD660B 54 5D 13 13 13	310 320 330 PASS 340 350 360 370 380 380 390 400	LD H,(IX+1 LD D,H LD E,L INC DE INC DE	;Save outer loop counter. 0) ;Point HL to first string 1) ;descriptor ;Point DE to second string ;descriptor.
C5 D5 E5	400 410 COMPR 420 430	INC DE PUSH BC PUSH DE PUSH HL	;Save inner loop counter.
1A A7 ⁻	440 450	LD A,(DE) AND A	;Test upper string length.
285C 4F 0C	460 470 480	JR Z,SWAP? LD C,A INC C	;If empty jump with carry clear. ;Load C with upper string length.
7E A7 3F	490 500 510	LD A,(HL) AND A CCF	;Test length of lower string.
2855 47 04	520 530 540	JR Z,SWAP? LD B,A INC B	;If empty jump with carry set. ;Load B with lower string length.
EB 23 7E 23	550 560 570 580	EX DE,HL INC HL LD A,(HL) INC HL	;Point DE to upper string.
66 6F 23 7E 23 66 6F	590 600 610 620 630 640 650 660	LD H,(HL) LD L,A EX DE,HL INC HL LD A,(HL) INC HL LD H,(HL)	;Point HL to lower string.
7E D630 D60A 302F	670 680 690 700	LD L,A LD A,(HL) SUB £30 SUB £0A JR NC,CLOOI	;If lower string does not start ;with a number, jump to CLOOP. P
1A D630 D60A	710 720 730	LD A, (DE) SUB £30 SUB £0A	;If upper string does not begin ;with a number, jump to CLOOP.
3028 E5 D5 C5 0E00	740 750 760 770 780	JR NC,CLOOD PUSH HL PUSH DE PUSH BC LD C,0	;Save values.
7E D630 D60A 3004 OC	790 SGLP1 800 810 820 830	LD A, (HL) SUB E30 SUB E0A JR NC, SG1D INC C	;This loop counts the number of ;numerical characters before a ;decimal point (or other character) N ;in the lower string, placing the ;result in H.

840 850 860 SG1DN 870 880 890	INC HL DJNZ SGLP1 LD H,C POP BC PUSH BC	Retrieve length of second string.
900 910 SGLP2 920 930 940 950 960	LD C,0 LD A,(DE) SUB £30 SUB £0A JR NC,SG2DN INC C INC DE	;string, leaving the result in C.
980 SG2DN 990 1000 1010 1020	LD A,C SUB H POP BC POP DE POP HL	;Test for same sized numbers, ;setting carry in the process. ;Restore old values.
1030 1040 CLOOP 1050 1060 1080	JR NZ, SWAP? DEC B JR Z, SWAP? CCF ; DEC C	;If numbers are not same size, jump. ;Decrement lengths, and if either ;reach zero, set the carry flag accordingly and jump to SWAP?
1090 1100 1110 1120 1130 1140	LD A, (DE) SUB (HL) INC DE INC HL	;Compare characters from strings, ;increment string pointers, and if ;the characters were equal, jump ;back to CLOOP.
1144 1146 PATCH 1170 SWAP? 1180 1190	JR SWAP? JR PASS POP HL POP DE RLA	;A "bodge" to allow the routine ;to be position independent. ;Restore pointers
1210 1220 1230 1240	RRA JR C,NXCM? LD H,D LD L,E	;Test if swap possible. ;If not, point HL to new ;"lowest" string.
1260 1270 1280 1290	DEC BC LD A,B OR C JR Z,ENDCP	;Test for last comparison. ;If it is jump to ENDCP.
1310 1320 1330 1340 ENDCP 1350 1360	INC DE INC DE JR COMPR LD C,(IX+10) LD B,(IX+11) AND A	;Point DE to next string descriptor. ;Jump back for next comparison. ;This section points DE and HL ;to the two string descriptors ;to be swapped in the first field.
	850 860 SG1DN 870 880 890 900 910 SGLP2 920 930 940 950 960 970 980 900 910 920 930 940 950 960 970 980 900 1000 1020 1030 1040 1050 1060 1080 1090 1100 1120 1130 1140 1144 1146 1190 1200 1210 1220 1230 1240 1250 1300 1310 1320 1330 1340 ENDCP 1350 <td>850 DJNZ SGLP1 860 SGIDN LD H,C 870 POP BC 880 PUSH BC 890 LD E,C 900 LD C,O 910 SGLP2 LD A, (DE) 920 SUB £30 930 SUB EOA 940 JR NC, SG2DN 950 INC C 960 JNZ SGLP2 980 SG2DN LD A,C 990 SUB H 1000 POP BC 1010 POP BC 1020 POP HL 1030 JR Z,SWAP? 1040 CLOOP DEC 1050 JR Z,SWAP? 1060 CCF ; 1060 JR Z,SWAP? 1060 LD A,(DE)</td>	850 DJNZ SGLP1 860 SGIDN LD H,C 870 POP BC 880 PUSH BC 890 LD E,C 900 LD C,O 910 SGLP2 LD A, (DE) 920 SUB £30 930 SUB EOA 940 JR NC, SG2DN 950 INC C 960 JNZ SGLP2 980 SG2DN LD A,C 990 SUB H 1000 POP BC 1010 POP BC 1020 POP HL 1030 JR Z,SWAP? 1040 CLOOP DEC 1050 JR Z,SWAP? 1060 CCF ; 1060 JR Z,SWAP? 1060 LD A,(DE)

involving every byte of RAM! This happened on one occasion while I was still developing the BASIC, so I have left the error check (testing BC for zero) in the routine to help you avoid the same mistake.

Comparison section

You should recognise lines 330-670 as being similar to SortString, with a check for empty strings. Next comes the number handling (lines 680-1030). The lower string's first character is tested to see if it is an ASCII digit, that is, has a value in the range &30 to &39. We test for this with two successive subtractions: subtracting &30 will, if the character is a digit, bring it into the range 0 to 9; a further subtraction of &0A (10) will therefore only cause a carry if the character is in this range.

The second string is tested in the same manner, and if either string does not begin with a digit, then both strings are compared as if they are character strings rather than values by jumping ahead to CLOOP.

Comparing strings as 'numbers'

The next section deals with strings which the routine has decided are numbers; both strings of the comparison begin with digits. Before two loops are used to count the number of digits in each string, the values in BC, DE and HL are saved on the stack.

SGLP1 (lines 790-850) counts the number of significant digits in the string, that is, the number of ASCII digits before a non-digit character. Comparing 2 with 1000 using CLOOP would give 2 a higher significance than 1000 as its first character is higher; to avoid this problem we check through each character of the first string, using C as a counter. On each pass through the loop, if a valid digit is found, C is incremented; the pointer to the string, HL, is also incremented: and then B (holding the total length of the string) is decremented and tested. We will only exit from SGLP1 when we have found a non-numeric character or the end of the string has been reached — in both cases C will hold a value for the number of significant digits in the first string. When we move on to SGLP2 we will want to retain the value in C, but as HL is now temporarily available, we can move the value into H. BC is now free, allowing us to load C with the length of the second string by POPing and then rePUSHing BC. SGLP2 performs the same task as the first significance loop, except on the second string. By the time we leave the second loop we have two values, in C and H, which we can compare.

Notice that SGLP2 uses the DJNZ instruction even though it means transferring the contents of C to B. If we used DEC C and JR NZ instead, the number of program bytes would remain the same, and even in the case of one

pass of the loop we would only save one machine cycle, because single-byte LD and DEC operations take 4 cycles, and conditional JRs use 13 or 8 cycles depending upon whether the condition is met or not, while DJNZ takes 16 or 11 cycles respectively. Two passes of the loop and we break even, and each pass after that would cost a cycle if we stuck with C. This may seem a rather pedantic point to make, but these are the sort of principles that we will need to bear in mind when writing code to achieve speed — in this case we need not even sacrifice RAM locations.

Back to the listing, and SG2DN (SiGnificance loop 2 DoNe): at this stage the two significant figure values, i.e. the number of digits before a decimal point (or other non-numeric character) are compared. If they are equal and the Z flag is therefore set by the subtraction, we must continue to compare the strings. If they are numbers with the same quantity of significant digits then CLOOP will be able to handle them. On the other hand, if they are not equal, we have sufficient information (in the carry flag, of course) to move on to SWAP?

Ordinary strings reach CLOOP from lines 700 or 740. This is exactly the same as the comparison loop in SortString, with one minor oddity: all routes to CLOOP arrive with carry clear, so no AND A instruction is needed. What are lines 1144-1146 doing in the middle of the routine? SortArray is rather long, over the 128-byte limit that JR can dictate. If we used a JP at the end of the second loop to jump to the beginning, the routine would not be position-independent as we would need to supply an actual address for JP to load into the PC. In order to keep the routine position-independent, the end of the outer loop performs a JR to PATCH, which causes another relative jump to the start of the loop. This is ugly and unstructured but it works. The uneven line numbering helps to show that this is not part of the program flow.

The swap section

SWAP? (lines 1170-1240), having restored the pointers, makes the decision as to whether to move the lowest-string pointer, HL, on the basis of the result in the carry flag, but remember that we want to make SortArray bi-directional. This can be achieved by inverting the carry if a sort is desired in Z to A order, which means we actually use HL as a highest-string pointer. Line 1190 saves the carry in bit 0 of the A register, and then in line 1200 we XOR it with bit 0 of (IX+0), the direction parameter. If this was set, the resultant bit 0 of A is an inversion of the carry, otherwise it holds the original value. The new value is rotated back into carry for use as the basis of the SWAP? decision. This is quite a powerful use of XOR.

Lines 1250-1330 end the inner loop, as seen in SortString.

Now to the part where the whole array is sorted on one field. The address of

the first element in the sorting field is fetched from the parameter area and placed in BC. Lines 1360-1400 subtract this from the two pointers so that HL and DE contain the offset from the beginning of the field of the two descriptors in which we are interested. Note that the first and second string pointers have temporarily changed register pairs due to the EX instruction. We now add these offsets to the base address of the whole array, swapping the registers with another EX. Fetching the number of fields and incrementing it leaves BC as a counter for the next loop, XFELM (transFer ELeMents).

XFDSC is a loop inside this, and swaps the three bytes of each descriptor. When the first field is done, the pre-calculated offset to the next field is added to the original pointers, safely recovered from the stack, and the next field swapped about. The process continues until line 1690 detects that no more fields are to be swapped.

The outer loop ends with its counter being retrieved and decremented. If another pass is required, it is jumped to via PATCH, as described earlier. SortArray is a fairly complex routine to follow, particularly for newcomers to machine code. Once you have become knowledgeable in its workings you may want to improve its number handling capabilities to include negative and even floating point numbers. If you enjoy attention to detail you might try to shrink its size so that PATCH is not required — if you succeed, let me know! As a part of *Database*, SortArray transforms a BASIC program into something quite impressive. As the basis of a machine code filing program it will serve well, but remember that if you are going to write in pure machine code you can arrange your data variables area to suit yourself. The manner in which the BASIC variables are laid out is very useful for implementing variable length strings, but garbage collection then becomes a problem. Having fixed length strings may seem a waste of space but can lead to some very fast searching as well as sorting routines.

The end of this chapter brings us to the end of our sorting routines, but not the end of *Database*. In the next chapter we will add the *Search* facility.

CHAPTER 6 Enhancing Database

A search routine

The routines presented in this chapter are all designed to improve the BASIC program introduced in the last chapter, *Database*. The functions they perform, however, may be put to good use in other programs, and the principles involved may be harnessed to your own ends.

The first routine, *Search*, has a self explanatory title. If you give it a target string, it will find a matching one from any field of the BASE\$ array and return its number to BASIC. The time savings achieved by using machine code instead of BASIC for this particular purpose are not so dramatic as we have seen with the previous sorting routines, but the method is neat, and it allows the inclusion of so-called wild cards in the target string. These enables us to search for strings without giving a full description.

Search can be used to find a particular entry in the database. If you want to remind yourself of the people who are in your address file whose first name is Paul, then Search will find them for you.

A wild card feature enhances *Search*. This allows you to define characters as wild, in which case the routine will match them to any character. Take the example of finding out whose birthdays occur this month; if you have included a date of birth field in your address book database, you may have included it in the form DD-MM-YY, where DD is the date, MM the month and YY the year. Note that you should use two digits for each value, so a birth date of 2nd February 1960 would be entered as 02-02-60. On the other hand, perhaps you might wish to sort the information by age, in which case the form YY-MM-DD would at least allow you to put people in order of the year in which they were born.

Where the wild card feature comes into its own is in finding all the people who were born in, say, June. By giving the target string as '\\-06', where the first two characters are wild, then we can find each entry in the date of birth filed that has '-06' as its third, fourth and fifth characters.

Search is interfaced with Database in such a way that the hunt for matching strings begins at the entry after the one currently on display. Therefore, if the 'forename' field is searched for the name 'Paul', the search will begin with the next file. If the last file is reached before a match is found, then Search goes

back to the beginning of the aray and continues looking until it has cycled back to the first string that it tested.

If no matching string is found in any of the 'forename' fields of BASE\$, the BASIC of *Database* will find a negative value in the result variable RES% and simply re-display the original file. If, however, a match is found, then the number of the file is returned in RES% and *Database* displays that file, making a beep to inform you of its success. To find any further entries that match the target string, you simply call the search function again.

Implementing Search

The incorporation of *Search* into the BASIC of *Database* is achieved by adding the lines of *Program 6.1* to *Program 5.2*. At two points new lines replace parts of the original, while the rest slot into gaps. The bulk of Program 6.1 consists of new data statements, containing the machine code for *Search*; the first data statement alters the size read by the code loading routine, so SortArray is loaded immediately above HIMEM, followed, 232 bytes later, by *Search*.

Program 6.1

1070 MAXI%=250:RES% --1:SCH\$="-"

4125 IF T%=83 OR T%=115 THEN 4500 4500 PRINT #2,"Current search string? ";SCH\$;" (Y/N) "; 4510 INPUT #2,T\$ 4520 IF T\$<>"N" AND T\$<>"n" THEN 4550 4530 PRINT #2,"Enter new string (= wild card) "; 4540 LINE INPUT #2,SCH\$ 4550 INPUT #2,"Which field do you wish to search";WH% 4560 WH%=WH%-1:IF WH%<0 OR WH%>F% THEN 4550 4570 CALL HIMEM+233,EX%+1,@BASE\$(0,WH%),@BASE\$(IM%,WH%),@SCH\$,@RES% 4580 IF RES%>-1 THEN PRINT CHR\$(7):EX%=RES% 4590 GOTO 4030 9010 DATA 368

9310 DATA 3E,03,DD,86,04,DD,77,04,768 9320 DATA 30,03,DD,34,05,DD,4E,08,636 9330 DATA DD,46,09,60,69,09,09,DD,740 9340 DATA 5E,06,DD,56,07,19,DD,75,777 9350 DATA 08,DD,74,09,EB,DD,6E,04,924 9360 DATA DD,66,05,A7,ED,52,20,09,855 9370 DATA 01,00,00,DD,5E,06,DD,56,629 9380 DATA 07,C5,DD,6E,02,DD,66,03,863 9390 DATA 1A,4F,46,04,0C,13,23,7E,371 9400 DATA 23,66,6F,EB,7E,23,E5,66,975 9410 DATA 6F,0D,20,03,05,18,0D,05,206 9420 DATA 28,0A,1A,FE,5C,28,01,BE,653 9430 DATA 13,23,28,ED,D1,13,C1,28,792 9440 DATA 0E,03,DD,6E,08,DD,66,09,688 9450 DATA A7,ED,52,20,B0,CB,F8,DD,1366 9460 DATA 6E,00,DD,66,01,71,23,70,694 9470 DATA C9,00,00,00,00,00,00,201

By adding the new lines to *Database*, saving and then running the modified program, you will find that the 'S' option of the Examine function becomes active. When it is chosen, you will be asked if you want to enter a new target string, while the previous target string is displayed in brackets. The first time you select *Search* the old target string will be empty; when you enter your chosen string you will be asked which field you wish to search. Having been given a suitable value, the program then calls *Search*, and moments later (microseconds, if you have a small database) the computer will beep and show you the first file in which it found the target string. No beep, no match — you are returned to the original. Finding the next occurrence does not involve you in re-entering the target string.

To include wild card characters in the target string, use the slash symbol (running 'downhill' left to right) to indicate letters you are not interested in. Although similar in structure to our sorting routines, *Search* uses a different method for detecting the end of its scan through the strings. The code consists of two nested loops (one loop inside another): the outer loop cycles through each file and uses the inner loop to compare the chosen field with the target string. The outer loop ends either when it returns to the first address that it tested or finds a match.

Source	code	listing	6.1
--------	------	---------	-----

		 100 ;Search. 110 ;Finds the first string in an array that matches a given 120 ;string, which may include "wild cards". 130 ;Searching may begin at any part of an array. 140 ;Item at which to begin search, addresses of first, last 150 ;and target strings, plus integer variable for result to 160 ;be passed by BASIC. On return the result will hold the 170 ;the offset of the first element that matches, or a value 180 ;one greater than the number of elements if no match.
		190 ; Position independent - corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.
7000	3E03	200 SEARCH LD A,3 ;Add 3 to the "last element"
7002	DD8604	210 ADD A, (IX+4) ; address.
7005	DD7704	220 LD (IX+4),A
7008	3003	230 JR NC,SKIP
700A	DD3405	240 INC (IX+5)
700D	DD4E08	250 SKIP LD C,(IX+8) ;Put number of initial item into BC.
7010	DD4609	260 LD B,(IX+9)
7013	60 .	270 LD H,B ;Put it in HL and multiply by 3.
7014	69	280 LD L,C
7015	09	290 ADD HL,BC

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

7016 7017 701A 701D 701E 7024 7025 7028 7026 7026 7026 7026 7026 7030 7030 7030 7030 7030 7030 7030 703	09 DD5E06 DD5607 19 DD7409 EB DD6E04 DD6605 A7 ED52 2009 010000 DD5E06 DD5607 C5 DD6E02 DD6603 1A 4F 46 00 0C 13 23 7E 23 66 66 F EB 7E 23 23 E5 66 66 F EB 7E 23 E5 66 66 F EB 7E 23 E5 66 66 F EB 7E 23 E5 66 66 F EB 7E 23 E5 66 66 F EB 7E 23 E5 2003 05 280A 1A F E5 280A 1A F E5 2801 BF	300 310 320 320 330 340 350 360 370 400 410 420 430 440 450 1NLP 460 470 480 500 510 520 530 540 550 560 550 560 550 560 570 580 590 610 620 630 640 650 TEST 660 670 680 690 STR? 700 710 720 730 740	ADD LD ADD LD ADD LD ADD LD AND SBC R LD LD LD LD LD LD LD LD LD LD LD LD LD	D,(IX+7) HL,DE (IX+8),L (IX+8),L (IX+8),L (IX+9),H DE,HL L,(IX+4) H,(IX+5) A HL,DE NZ,INLP BC,O E,(IX+6) D,(IX+7) BC L,(IX+2) H,(IX+7) BC L,(IX+2) H,(IX+7) BC L,(IX+2) H,(IX+7) BC L,(IX+2) H,(IX+1) H,(IX+2) H,(IX+1) H,(IX+2) H,(IX+1) H,(IX+2) C,A B,(HL) HL H,(HL) L,A C DE HL A,(HL) HL H,(HL) L,A C C NZ,STR? B NLP? B Z,NXLP? A,(DE) #5C Z,NXELM	<pre>;Add the address of the first item. ;Store "already checked" address in ;IX memory area. ;DE points to item to test. ;Fetch address of end of array. ;Clear carry. ;Compare with current address. ;If we have reached the end, restore ;BC and pointer to start of array. ;Save counter. ;Point HL to target string ;descriptor. ;Put length of test string into C. ;Put length of target string into B. ;Increment lengths for test purposes. ;Point to addresses of strings. ;Get addresses. ;DE now points to target string. ;If we have not tested whole of test ;string, jump to STR?. ;Set Z if target has been completed. ;If we have test whole of target ;string jump to NXLP?. ;Test target string for "wild card".</pre>
	280A 1A FE5C	700 710 720	JR LD CP	Z,NXLP? A,(DE) #5C	;string jump to NXLP?.
	23 28ED D1 13 C1 280E 03 DD6E08 DD6609 A7 ⁻ ED52 20B0	760 770 780 NXLP? 790 800 810 820 830 840 850 860 870	INC INC JR POP INC POP JR INC LD LD LD SBC JR	HL Z,TEST DE DE BC Z,RESLT BC L,(IX+8) H,(IX+9) A HL,DE	;If match or "wild", jump back. ;Restore "next descriptor -1" to DE ;Point DE to next descriptor. ;Retrieve counter. ;If we have found a match, jump. ;Increment counter.

CBF8	880			;Make counter negative.
DD6E00	890 RESLT	LD	L,(IX+0)	;Get address of result variable.
DD6601	900	LD	H,(IX+1)	
71	910	LD	(HL),C	;Load it with counter.
23	920	INC	HL .	
70	930	LD	(HL),B	
C9	940	RET		

Search is documented in Source Listing 6.1. It expects a number of values to be passed by BASIC. In order that they should arrive in the IX memory area they are:

@RES%: The address of an integer variable in which Search will place the result.

@SCH\$: The address of the string descriptor of the target string.

@BASE\$(IM%, WH%): The address of the last item in the selected field of the data array.

(@BASE\$(IM%,0)): The address of the first item in the selected field of the array.

EX%+1: The number of the file after the one currently on display: if this is one higher than the total number of items in the field, *Search* will automatically adjust.

The routine, as loaded by *Database*, is located at HIMEM+233. It is fully relocatable, so it can be placed in any safe area of RAM.

Search's first task, when called, is to alter the value in (IX+4) and (IX+5). When BASIC calls Search, this parameter contains the address of the descriptor of the last element of the field. By adding 3 to the 16-bit parameter, it will point to an address after the last descriptor of the selected field. This is a useful address to have stored; it can be compared with the address of the descriptor we are about to test to show if we have reached the end of the field. If this is the case, we need to recommence the search at the beginning of the field.

Study how index register operations are used in lines 200-210; often these carry a time penalty, but note that line 240 will be skipped over unless adding 3 to the low byte results in a carry.

BC is used by the outer loop to keep track of the number of the string currently being tested. The value in BC will be returned in the RES% variable as the 'answer' to *Search* — it is *not* used as a loop counter. It would be possible to leave the initial value in the RAM parameter area instead of using a register pair, but the time and size factors of index operations must be considered. Using (INC(IX+d), as we did in line 240, takes three bytes and no less than 23 machine cycles, to say nothing of the further 5 bytes and 12 or even 30 cycles to handle a potential carry into the MSB. POP, INC and PUSH BC total 3 bytes and 26 cycles. Using BC does mean that we have to load the result back into RAM at the end of the program, but this is something that

only needs to be done once, rather than on each pass of the outer loop. The arguments in favour of using the index instructions are founded in keeping the program easy to follow, rather than fast and compact.

Another reason for using BC to hold the file number value rather than one of the other values needed by the routine, is that the initial file number must be fetched from RAM for the purposes of calculating addresses. Having gone to the trouble of fetching the value, we may as well keep it in BC or on the stack. Lines 270-360 serve two purposes, the most obvious of which is to load DE with the address of the first item we are about to test. In addition, this address is stored in RAM to be used to test for the end of the outer loop. The address could be passed by BASIC, but it is easy for us to calculate it ourselves. The process involves multiplying the number of the first item we wish to test by three, as there are three bytes to each descriptor, and adding the address of the first item in the field. You could argue that we don't multiply the number, but add it to itself twice; the answer is the same.

DE is used as a pointer by the outer loop to keep track of the next string descriptor. It holds an address, rather than a value, and this is checked to see if the outer loop has finished: in other words if all the fields have been searched. I have chosen DE because we will need HL for any address calculations, but we can swap these two pairs with ease (EX DE,HL). BC is normally used as a counter because of the special instructions that make use of it — LDIR and the like, as well as DJNZ. Even when not using these, it helps to work to a pattern — I use B and C individually or as a pair to count with whenever practical.

The outer loop

We enter the loop at CHKAD (CHecK ADdress), line 370. HL is loaded with the address in (IX+4) and (IX+5) that we modified earlier to point past the last entry in the descriptor block in which we are interested. The AND A, SBC HL,DE will result in a carry if we have reached the end — in this event, we reload DE with the address of the first item in the field and reset BC to zero.

The inner loop is prepared for from line 450: BC is saved on the stack. Next you will see that HL is loaded with the address of the target string descriptor — I have used the long-winded index instructions despite what I have said above about size and space, although it should be possible to preserve the address of the target string on the stack. Instinct tells me that savings will be small, if any, and would produce a routine that would be difficult to understand. Another solution to the problem of running out of general purpose register pairs will be demonstrated in the next routine.

We now enter a section already familiar with SortString and SortArray; lines

480-640 load B and C with the respective lengths (+1) of the target and test strings, while DE and HL are loaded with their addresses. In line 600 we save the address of the last byte of the test descriptor on the stack (next descriptor -1) for retrieval at a later stage. Note that HL and DE have now swapped roles, and HL is pointing to the target string, we have used only one EX DE,HL instruction. This is because the next section will need to make use of CP (HL), and there is no CP (DE) instruction. Speed is particularly important in the inner loop which follows because it will be repeated for every character that the routine examines.

The inner loop

Test begins by decrementing C: this is used to keep track of how many untested characters remain in the string. We loaded it with the length of the test string plus one before entering Test, so on the first pass we will detect if the test string was empty to begin with. If this is not the case, or on subsequent passes further characters remain to be tested, a jump to STR? is made. However, if the test string was empty or we have been through the loop enough times to have examined the whole of the test string, the routine can decide if a match has been found. In this event the routine decrements B to set the Z flag accordingly and then jumps to the end of the inner loop — if B does not reach zero then the target string is longer than the test string, and by definition a match is not possible; this information is passed in the Z flag. If the routine finds it has characters of the test string remaining to be compared with those of the target, it will have moved on to STR?, where it tests the length of the target string. Remember that it will not have gone through line 670 to get to this point, so B can be decremented to test for zero. If it reaches zero then one of two reasons may be the cause: if this is the first pass of the loop, Search has been passed an empty target string: or on subsequent passes we have successfully tested all the characters in the target string against the test string; a match has been found, the Z flag is set and we jump to NXLP?

Lines 710-740 handle the comparison of characters and the wild card feature. On the first pass, the first, or on subsequent passes, further characters of the target string are moved into A. This is compared with &5C, the ASCII code for our wild card character — if they match then a jump is made to NXELM. If you would like Search to treat another character as wild, you can replace line 700 with CP X, (FE X), where X is the ASCII code of your chosen wild card symbol.

Line 740 performs another comparison, this time the character of the target string is compared with the respective character of the test string, setting Z if the characters match.

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

NXELM increments the address pointers to both strings so as to point to the next characters, and then the conditional jump JR Z,TEST will return us to line 650 if either the target string had contained a wild card or the two characters matched; if this is the case we must continue to cycle through the TEST loop.

You can see that there are three possible exits from the inner loop: the first, at line 670, occurs if all the characters of the test string have been examined: the second, at line 700, happens if all the target characters have been tested: the third is at line 770 — here an exit will only occur if we find two respective characters that do not match. The state of the Z flag indicates why we have exited; if set then we have found a matching string.

We go to the trouble of arranging the Z flag to reflect a match because of lines 780-800. If we jumped to different parts of the routine according to the result of the test, then we would have to have two sets of instructions to restore the stack pointer to its correct value. As written, lines 780-800 are reached in both match and non-match situations.

We POP the 'next descriptor -1' address into DE and then increment it so as to point to the next test string descriptor. The counter is then restored to BC before the decision JR Z,RESLT is taken. If a match has been found, execution transfers to line 890, otherwise the counter is incremented and a test is made to see if a further pass of the outer loop is required. The 'already tested' address is placed in HL and compared with the new descriptor address; if they don't match then another loop is called for so we jump back to CHKAD.

Returning to BASIC

Line 880 is only ever reached by having tested all the strings in the field without finding a match. SET 7,B has the effect of making the counter negative, according to the integer variable convention of Locomotive BASIC. This is how we indicate that no match has been found. At RESLT, the address of the result variable is put into HL and the counter value stored at that address before returning to BASIC.

You may notice that the counter has a maximum capacity of &7FFF (32767), but it is way beyond the memory capacity of the Amstrad to have a string array of that number of elements — the descriptor block alone would occupy 96K bytes!

Two further enhancements

The next routine is designed to speed up a process that, although perfectly possible, would take some time in BASIC. ArrayShift is also a showcase for a

Z80 instruction that we have not used so far — LDIR. One routine allows two functions to be implemented by BASIC: you can move the currently displayed file to the end of the database, thereby allowing a degree of manual sorting: the same routine also enables us to implement a delete function, completely removing the file on display from the records.

Program 6.2 consists of the BASIC required to add move and delete commands to Database: only one line, 9010, replaces a line in the original. Please be aware that Program 6.2 is designed to be used in conjunction with Program 6.1, as it assumes that the Search routine is loaded into memory and places ArrayShift above it. Load the second version of Database, the one to which you have added Program 6.1, and then enter the lines of Program 6.2. Save the new program and then run it. If you have made an error when entering the new DATA statements you will be informed at this point.

```
Program 6.2
```

4192 PRINT #2,"1 - Alter | 2 - Move to end | 3 - Delete |"; 4194 INPUT #2,T%:IF T%<1 OR T%>3 THEN 4192 4196 ON T% GOTO 4200,4300,4400 4300 CALL HIMEM+369, @BASE\$(EX%, 0), @BASE\$(IM%, 0), @BASE\$(EX%, 1), F%+1 4310 GOTO 4260 4400 PRINT #2,"Are you sure? (Y/N)"; 4410 INPUT #2,T\$ 4420 IF T\$<>"Y" AND T\$<>"y" THEN 4260 4430 CALL HIMEM+369, @BASE\$(EX%, 0), @BASE\$(IM%, 0), @BASE\$(EX%, 1), F%+1 4440 FOR X=0 TO F% 4450 BASE\$(IM%,X)='" 4460 NEXT X 4470 IF IM%>0 THEN IM%=IM%-1 4480 GOTO 4260 9010 DATA 440 9480 DATA DD,46,00,78,A7,C8,DD,6E,1109 9490 DATA 02, DD, 66, 03, DD, 5E, 04, DD, 868 9500 DATA 56,05,A7,ED,52,E5,EB,DD,1262 9510 DATA 5E,06,DD,56,07,A7,ED,52,900 9520 DATA 20,02,E1,C9,E5,FD,E1,EB,1402 9530 DATA D1, D5, 54, 5D, 4E, 23, 7E, F5, 1083 9540 DATA 23,7E,23,C5,FD,E5,C1,ED,1305 9550 DATA B0,C1,D1,2B,77,2B,72,2B,940 9560 DATA 71, D1, 19, 10, E4, C9, 00, 00, 792

If all is well, you will find that using the *Edit* option while examining a file will present you with three choices: altering the file as before, deleting the file or

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

placing it at the end. This last option is probably more useful than you think: having sorted by a particular field you can sift through the relevant entries placing the ones of interest at the end of the file where they can be printed out as a block. *Delete* means that you can remove a record when it is no longer of interest, reclaiming the memory space that it occupies into the bargain.

Source code listing 6.2

504100 000	•• ••••									
	100	;ArrayS	Shift							
			Moves all the fields of a selected file to the end of the							
	120	arrav.	array, shifting all the other files up to fill the gap.							
	130	·Recuir	Requires the addresses of the the last item in the first							
	1/0	.fiold	and	the coloct	ed item in the first and second					
	150	,fiold		a the numb	ar of fields to be perced by RACIC					
	160	, Dandad	, pru		er of fields to be passed by BASIC.					
DD/(00	160	;POSITI			- corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL, IY					
DD4600	170		LD	B,(IX+O)	;Fetch number of fields for use as					
78	180		LD	A,B	;outer loop counter.					
A7	190		AND	A	;Safety check for zero.					
C8	200		RET	Z						
DD6E02	210		LD	L,(IX+2)	;Load HL with address of selected					
DD6603	220		LD	$H_{1}(IX+3)$; item in second field.					
DD5E04	230		LD	E,(IX+4)	;Load DE with address of last item					
DD5605	240		LD	D,(IX+5)	; in first field.					
A7	250		AND	A	;Makes HL contain offset from end					
ED52	260		SBC	HL,DE						
EDJ2 E5	270		PUSH		; of one field to begining of next.					
					;Save offset on stack.					
EB	280		EX	DE, HL	;Field 1, last item address into HL.					
DD5E06	290		LD	E,(IX+6)	;Field 1, selected item address					
DD5607	300		LD	D,(IX+7)	;into DE.					
A7	310		AND	A						
ED52	320		SBC	HL,DE	;Calculate number of descriptor					
2002	330		JR	NZ, CONT	;bytes to move, and if zero,					
El	340		POP	HL	;restore stack pointer and					
C9	350		RET	;	return to BASIC.					
E5	360	CONT	PUSH	HL	;If not zero, place number of bytes					
FDE1	370		POP	IY	; to move into IY.					
EB	380		ΕX	DE,HL	Selected item address into HL.					
D1	390		POP	DE	;Get offset into DE.					
D5			PUSH		;Save DE for begining of loop.					
54	410		LD	D,H	;DE=HL.					
5D	420		LD	E,L	, LAIS-1111.					
4E	430		LD	C,(HL)	;Fetch selected descriptor bytes,					
23	440		INC	HL						
23 7E			-		;and point HL to next descriptor.					
	450		LD	A,(HL)						
F5	460		PUSH		;Save descriptor byte 2 on stack.					
23	470		INC	HL						
7E	480		LD	A,(HL)						
23	490		INC	IIL						
C5	500		PUSH	BC	;Save loop counter and byte 1.					
FDE5	510		PUSH	IY	;Number of bytes to be moved into					
C1	520		POP	BC	BC.					
EDB0	530		LDIR		Block move.					

C1 D1 2B 77 2B 72 2B 71 D1 19 10F4	540 550 560 570 580 590 600 610 620 630 640	POP BC POP DE DEC HL LD (HL),A DEC HL LD (HL),D DEC HL LD (HL),C POP DE ADD HL,DE DJNZ NXFLD	;Salvage loop counter and selected ;item descriptor bytes from stack. ;Point HL to last descriptor byte. ;Replace last descriptor with ;"moved" string descriptor bytes, ;and in the process point HL to ;byte l of last descriptor. ;Get offset from stack. ;HL points to next selected item. ;If more fields, do loop again.
10E4 C9		,	;If more fields, do loop again.

The ArrayShift routine

Source Listing 6.2 gives the assembler mnemonics of the 70 bytes of code that make up the routine ArrayShift. Four parameters are required from BASIC: F%+1: the number of fields, counting from 1.

@BASE\$(EX%,1): the address of the descriptor of the second field of the currently displayed file.

(@BASE\$(EX%,0)): the address of the descriptor of the first field of the currently displayed file.

ArrayShift has a two-loop structure, although the inner loop consists of only one instruction, LDIR. The outer loop rearranges each field in turn. As before, only the descriptor bytes are moved, not the strings themselves.

All the values required are calculated in the preparation section, lines 170-390. There are also two error traps in order to cope with some of the bad parameters that may be sent by BASIC. Lines 170-200 fetch the number of fields and place them into both B and A. B is to be used as the outer loop counter, while A is tested for zero. If the number of fields sent to the routine happens to be zero, then we return immediately, having done nothing.

Next, the address of the descriptor of the last item in the first field is subtracted from the address of the selected item's descriptor (the one we wish to move) in the first field. This results in a value which is the distance between the end of one field's descriptors and the beginning of the next. We save this value on the stack: it corresponds to the number of bytes that we are going to have to move so that the descriptors above the selected item move down in memory to fill the gap. If this value happens to be zero, it is clear that we are trying to move the last item to the end, which is pointless. It would also cause a nasty crash for reasons I will explain in a moment. So, if the result of the subtraction is zero, no jump is made at line 330. The stack pointer is restored to its correct value and we return to BASIC.

If we do reach CONT, line 360, the result of the subtraction is placed into the IY register. This saves us storing a value in RAM which will be required

inside the loop. The moving of data between the index and general purpose register pairs, however, is not helped by the Z80 instruction set — PUSH and POP are the only sensible way to do this, although they are rather time-consuming at 15 and 14 machine cycles respectively. EX DE,HL places the address of the first item we wish to shift into HL: POP DE retrieves the offset calculated earlier. We are now ready to enter the outer loop.

The outer loop of ArrayShift

The offset will only be used at the end of the loop, so it is put back on the stack to free DE, which is then loaded with HL's contents, so that it points to the descriptor which is to be moved. We now need to collect the three descriptor bytes so that they can be placed at the end of the field after moving the other descriptors. The first is placed in C and HL is incremented; the second is placed in A and saved on the stack. HL is incremented again, and the third descriptor byte to which HL now points is placed in A, where it will be safe for the time being. One more increment of HL and it conveniently points to the next descriptor block. Line 500 saves BC, which contains the loop counter and the first descriptor byte, on the stack. The final two instructions before the inner loop copy the contents of IY into BC.

Let us take stock of the situation. The following information is saved on the stack: the offset to the next field, the second descriptor byte, the first descriptor byte and the loop counter. DE points to the descriptor block which is to be removed to the end; HL points to the next descriptor block, while BC holds the number of bytes that need to be moved.

The inner loop

LDIR, line 530, has the following effect: the byte pointed to by HL is placed at address DE; HL and DE are incremented so that they point to the next bytes, and BC is then decremented. If BC becomes zero then LDIR ceases and control is passed to the next operation. However, if BC does not reach zero then the whole process is repeated over and over again until it does. Therefore, after the LDIR instruction we will have moved all the descriptor bytes of the current field, tha come above the descriptor that we wish to displace, down in memory by three locations; the RAM that contained the original descriptor holds the next, the second has been overwritten by the third, and so on. At the end of the field there are two copies of the last descriptor bytes.

You can see from the description of LDIR that if BC had held zero, the first time it was decremented it would have become FFFF hex — and LDIR would have moved the entire RAM contents of your computer, including all the

BASIC program, the stack and even *ArrayShift*, by three locations. I think you'll agree that this illustrates the efficacy of checking for a request to move a file to the end, when it is already at the end!

Ending the outer loop

Remember that the last three bytes of the descriptor block for the field just processed by the inner loop still hold their original value; we will now proceed to overwrite them with the carefully saved original three bytes of the descriptor of the item we are moving.

The loop counter and first byte are salvaged from the stack (POP BC), and then POP DE places the second byte, saved with the PUSH AF instruction in line 460, into D. At the end of the LDIR instruction, HL was left pointing to the byte after the location in which we want to deposit the displaced descriptor. DEC HL has the effect of pointing HL to where we wish to place the third byte: this was stored in A, so LD (HL),A overwrites the third descriptor byte. Further decrements of HL allow us to place the contents of D and C in their right places.

The whole of one field's descriptors have now been shifted: the item that we wanted to move has been set aside, the subsequent descriptors shifted along to fill the gap, and the displaced descriptor put at the end. We now need to retrieve the offset value from the stack and add it to HL so that it points to the required item in the next field. B is again holding the loop counter. Because the number of fields will be an eight-bit number, DJNZ is all that is required to terminate the outer loop. If another field is to be processed, we jump back to NXFLD (NeXt FieLD); the registers DE, HL and IY hold all the information required for another pass.

ArrayShift is simplified by its use of the LDIR instruction, although this does mean we are forced to use certain registers. Without LDIR we would need to use LD A,(HL); LD (DE),A; INC DE; INC HL; DEC BC; LD A,B; OR C; JR NZ — 52 machine cycles for each pass of the loop. LDIR only takes 21 cycles per pass, and has the additional bonus of not corrupting the A register.

Tying up the loose ends

Database is now almost complete; we have a number of useful routines which allow the information to be manipulated swiftly. One final facility will be of use, not only to *Database* but also to many other BASIC programs. The string sorting method gives lower case characters a higher value than upper case. Forcing all inputted information to upper case is the simplest solution, and to this end we could use the UPPER\$ function of Locomotive BASIC, but this would complicate the program. With a very short machine code routine we can redefine the lower case keys so that they yield upper case letters. This has the advantage that the INPUT statements print out the keys as they appear in the file.

Pulling yourself up by your bootstraps

Redefining the keys need only be done once. It is also time to tidy up the BASIC by removing the code loading routine and the DATA statements, so *Program 6.3* is written as a 'bootstrap' loader for the rest of *Database*. Let us begin with a description of how to create the final version of the *Database* program on cassette — disk users will find all the information they require but need not take any notice of the '!' symbols or mess around getting the programs in order.

```
Program 6.3
```

```
101 REM **
                                **
            Database Bootstrap
110 MODE 0
120 LOCATE 3,12
130 PRINT "Loading Database"
140 WHILE 1
150 READ BYTES: IF BYTES="END" THEN 180
160 CODES=CODES+CHRS(VAL ("&"+BYTES))
170 WEND
180 CALL PEEK (@CODE$+1)+256*PEEK(@CODE$+2)
190 OPENOUT "DUMMY"
200 MEMORY HIMEM-440
210 LOAD "!CODE", HIMEM+1
220 CLOSEOUT
230 RUN "!DBBASIC"
240 DATA 0E, 1A, 0C, 79, FE, 48, C8, CD
250 DATA 30, BB, 47, D6, 41, D6, 1A, 30
260 DATA F1,79,CD,27,BB,18,EB,END
```

Enter the *Database Bootstrap* routine, Program 6.3, and check the DATA statements with care — there is no checksum involved so an error here could well lead to a crash. Take a clean cassette and save this new program at the beginning. Now run the BASIC. When you hear the cassette relay click to start the tape, press ESC. You should find that the keyboard behaves as if CAPS LOCK is engaged — try pressing it and you should still get upper case characters. If this is not the case check the DATA statements.

When you have a working version of the bootstrap program, load the last version of *Database*, complete with the *Search*, *Move* and *Delete* modifications, and run it. Once the 'load a database' message appears, ESCape from the program, and enter the following line:

START=HIMEM+1:SAVE "CODE",B,START,440

Now replace the cassette on which *Bootstrap* was saved, wound past the first program; press play and record and then any key. The machine code will then be saved on tape, immediately following the first BASIC program. Now enter the following lines of BASIC:

DELETE 1060 DELETE 8000-9560

At this point you may want to list the program and delete the parts that handle lower case letters, such as OR T⁼"y" in line 1090.

The final step is to SAVE "DBBASIC" on the cassette, following the machine code. Rewind the tape and CATalogue it to check that you have a good recording. The tape now contains the final version of *Database*.

The *Bootstrap* program demonstrates a different method of using machine code, which is suitable for short routines. If the @ prefix is used on a variable name, the address of the variable (or in the case of strings, the descriptor) is returned, rather than the variable itself. This not only works for CALL statements, as used earlier, but also as a function. By creating a string which contains machine code bytes rather than characters, we can store a machine code routine using the BASIC variables system. This saves us having to lower HIMEM, and we can find the location of the code with the @ prefix as shown in line 180.

Two other features are demonstrated by Program 6.3. The OPENOUT "DUMMY" statement, along with the CLOSEOUT (lines 190 and 220), have the effect of permanently reserving a buffer area for cassette operations. This ensures that you don't enter too much data and then find that you run out of memory when you come to save it on tape, and it also avoids a garbage collection occurring every time you wish to use tape.

The second point for cassette users concerns the ! suffix on file names, which disables the prompt messages and avoids the need to "PRESS ANY KEY" when you wish to load a number of consecutive files from tape. This does not appear to be mentioned in my User manual, although it is documented in the Concise BASIC Specification.

CapsLock (Source Listing 6.3) revolves round two firmware routines. &BB30 is the location of KM GET SHIFT. By loading A with a key number (see

Source code listing 6.3

	120 ;upper 130 ;No er	;CapsLock ;Redefines all lower case keys so that they yield ;upper case characters. ;No entry requirements. ;Position independent - corrupts AF, BC and HL.						
0E1A	150 CAPS	LD	C , ∦1A	;Load C with first key number -1.				
0C	160 NXKEY	INC	C	;Let C equal next key number.				
79	170	LD	A,C	;Put key number into A.				
FE48	180	CP	#48	;If last key done, return.				
C8	190	RET	Z					
CD30BB	200	CALL	#BB30	;Get current shifted translation.				
47	210	LD	B,A					
D641	220	SUB	#41	; If it is not an upper case letter,				
D61A	230	SUB	#1A	; jump back for next key.				
30F1	240	JR	NC,NXKEY					
79	250	LD	A,C	;Put new translation into C.				
CD27BB	260	CALL	# BB27	;Alter unshifted translation.				
18EB	270	JR	NXKEY	;Jump back for next key.				

Appendix III of the User manual) and calling GET SHIFT, the ASCII value of that key is returned in A. &BB27 is KM SET TRANSLATE. If you load A with a key number and B with an ASCII value, and call SET TRANSLATE the character yielded by the key will be altered.

CapsLock itself is simple: it tests keys 26 to 71 (all the letters are contained in this range) to see if they give capital letters in the shifted mode, and if so it redefines the unshifted translation to match. C is used as a form of counter, as B is used by the SET TRANSLATE routine.

Note the use of a conditional return, RET Z. This and the other conditional returns — NZ, C, NC, M, N, PE, PO — are useful, but always remember that the stack pointer must be pointing to the return address; if you have stored anything on the stack you will need to retrieve it before a RET of any kind. For this reason, conditional returns are more likely to be productive in short routines or subroutines.

If you use *CapsLock* in other programs, you may like to know how to reverse the process and restore the keyboard to normal. The easiest way is to CALL &BB00, KM INITIALISE. This sets up the keyboard tables exactly as after switch-on: it corrupts AF, BC, DE and HL. Other firmware routines that may be of use in redefining the keyboard are:

&BB2A — GET TRANSLATE: as GET SHIFT for unshifted keys.

&BB2D — SET SHIFT: as SET TRANSLATE for shifted keys.

&BB33 — SET CONTROL: as SET TRANSLATE when CTRL is pressed.

&BB36 — GET CONTROL: as GET SHIFT when CTRL is pressed.

These, as well as SET TRANSLATE and GET SHIFT, all corrupt AF and

HL. Four more routines with similar responsibilities are:

&BB39 — SET REPEAT: defines whether a key should be allowed to repeat. A must contain the key number; if B is zero the key will not repeat, if &FF it will. Corrupts AF, BC and HL.

BB3C - GET REPEAT: tells you if a key is set to repeat or not. The answer is contained in the Z flag; if false the key repeats. AF and HL are corrupted.

BB3F - SET DELAY: sets the delay and repeat parameters. H should hold the delay and L the repeat values in 50ths of a second. Affects all repeating keys, and corrupts AF.

&BB42 — GET DELAY: returns the delay and repeat parameters in H and L respectively. Corrupts AF.

Developing the *Database* program has demonstrated more than just sorting techniques; we have seen how to search and move blocks of data around, as well as how to redefine the keyboard. I hope you will adapt the program to suit your own requirements.

CHAPTER 7 Graphics — a Circle Routine

The purpose of this chapter is two-fold: not only does it present a routine which will be profitable in programs that use graphics, but also the manner in which the routine works demonstrates more useful machine code methods; you will find these helpful in many other applications.

The routine, called Circle, adds a function to the Amstrad which is not available as a single command in Locomotive BASIC. Plotting a circle requires some lines of program like this:

100 FOR P=-R to +R 110 PLOT XX+P,YY+SQR(R*R-P*P) 120 NEXT P

This will, given suitable values for R (the radius), XX and YY (the centre of the circle), plot a passable semi-circle. If you add a second loop to plot negative Y axis co-ordinates, the result will be a circle. To enhance this method, PLOT the first point and then use the DRAW command to achieve a continuous shape. If you try writing a routine to create a circle using the above method, you will find that drawing one which fills the screen will take about 30 seconds, which is painfully slow for most purposes.

How can we speed up this process? Although the Locomotive BASIC resident in the Amstrad is a fast version of the language, if we can by-pass the BASIC interpreter we will gain a great speed advantage. A purpose-written routine in machine code will achieve this. However, the formula which needs to be used to plot a circle involves some fairly complex arithmetic. Consider this:

 $R^*R = X^*X + Y^*Y$

This relationship is true for all the points around the edge of a circle, centred at X=0, Y=0, of which the radius is R, where X and Y are the horizontal and vertical co-ordinates. We can re-write this as:

 $\mathbf{Y}^*\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{R}^*\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{X}^*\mathbf{X}$

```
or:
```

$Y = SQUARE ROOT (R^*R - X^*X)$

From this formula you can see that to calculate the positions which need to be plotted we must be able to multiply values together, and even more difficult, find the square root of a number. The BASIC interpreter can do this — and so can we; but because the BASIC works to a high degree of accuracy we can save time by limiting our calculations to the scale of numbers we are likely to meet. This, and bypassing the interpreter, are the two main reasons why the *Circle* routine can work about 20 times faster than the equivalent BASIC method.

Now let's prove that it can be done. *Program 7.1* should be entered, along with the code loading routine from Chapter 4. Save the program and run it; provided there are no mistakes in the data statements you will be asked to enter an origin (the centre of the circle), and then the program will draw a series of concentric circles. As written, the code needs to be loaded from address A600; it is not position independent, although you can change it to run at any other location.

Program 7.1

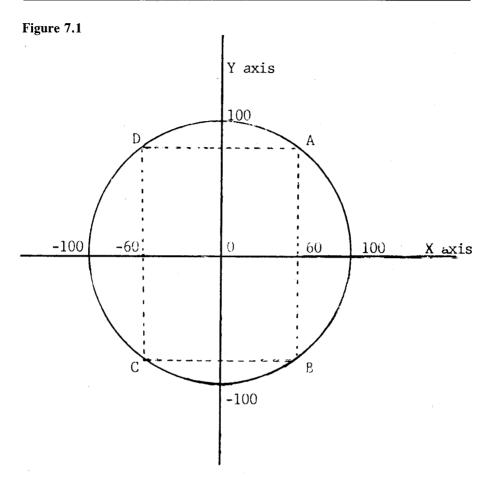
101 REM ** ** Circle Demo 110 MEMORY & A66F: GOSUB 8000 120 WHILE 1 130 INPUT "ORIGIN - X":X% INPUT ''ORIGIN - Y'';Y% 140 150 CLS 160 FOR R%=20 TO 200 STEP 20 170 CALL & A580, X%, Y%, R% 180 NEXT R% 190 WEND 200 END 9000 REM ************************ ** 9001 REM ** Circle Data 9010 DATA 240 9020 DATA DD,7E,00,A7,C8,DD,4E,02,1015 9030 DATA DD.46.03.DD.5E.04.DD.56.920 9040 DATA 05,26,00,6F,19,E5,C5,E5,834

```
9050 DATA C5.EB.E5.C5.16.00.5F.A7.1142
9060 DATA ED, 52, E5, C5, E5, C5, CD, 35, 1429
9070 DATA A6.D5.DD.21.02.00.DD.39.913
9080 DATA 3D.CD.35.A6.DD.6E.FE.DD.1291
9090 DATA 66.FF.A7.ED.52.E5.FD.E1.1550
9100 DATA F5, 3E, 80, 0E, 40, 11, 00, 40, 594
9110 DATA 18,06,CD,35,A6,FD,E5,E1,1161
9120 DATA ED.52.38.02.81.81.91.CB.983
9130 DATA 39,20,EF,41,4F,F1,11,10,746
9140 DATA 00, DD, 19, DD, 66, FB, DD, 6E, 1151
9150 DATA FA, 5F, 19, EB, DD, 66, F9, DD, 1398
9160 DATA 6E,F8,E5,09,CD,45,A6,E1,1261
9170 DATA E5, A7, ED, 42, D5, 11, FC, FF, 1436
9180 DATA DD, 19, D1, CD, 45, A6, E5, DD, 1345
9190 DATA 66,FF,DD,6E,FE,11,F8,FF,1462
9200 DATA DD, 19, 16, 00, 5F, A7, ED, 52, 849
9210 DATA EB.E1.CD.45.A6.E1.09.D5.1347
9220 DATA 11, FC, FF, DD, 19, D1, CD, 45, 1253
9230 DATA A6.A7.C2.B0.A5.11.14.00.905
9240 DATA DD.19.DD.F9.C9.2E.00.67.1066
9250 DATA 5F,16,00,06,08,29,30,01,221
9260 DATA 19,10,FA,EB,C9,F5,C5,D5,1382
9270 DATA E5.DD.6E.00.DD.66.01.DD.1105
9280 DATA 5E,02,DD,56,03,CD,C0,BB,990
9290 DATA E1, D1, DD, 75, 00, DD, 74, 01, 1110
9300 DATA DD, 73.02. DD, 72.03. D5. E5. 1118
9310 DATA CD.F6.BB.E1.D1.C1.F1.C9.1707
```

The method

The circle is plotted in four sections, to keep calculation time to a minimum. The method is best described by an example. Study Figure 7.1. It represents the circle we wish to draw, of radius 100, centered on co-ordinates 0,0. Three-quarters of the circle will not appear on the screen, but we can still work out the theoretical positions that need to be plotted. To plot an arbitrary point, which we will call A, marked in the top left sector, we can apply our formula using an arbitrary value for X:

Y = SQUARE ROOT (R*R - X*X) = SQUARE ROOT (10000 - 3600) = SQUARE ROOT (6400) = 80



Having calculated the relationship between X and Y, it is much simpler to find points B, C and D. If A has the co-ordinates X,Y, then

B=X,-Y: C=X,-Y: and D=-X,Y.

So there are three more points in the circle which we can calculate by simply changing the signs! Therefore

A=60,80: B=60,-80, C=60,-80 and D=-60,80

This saves time, because having calculated the value of Y for a particular value of X, we can plot a point in each of the four quadrants. If the circle is to have an origin somewhere other than 0,0, the co-ordinates of the origin can

Source code listing 7.1

504100 0	100	;Circle						
	110	Draws a	cir	cle with a	maximum radius of 255, centred on			
	120	definab	le u	ser co-ord	inates, on the graphics screen.			
	130	Uses th	;Uses the current Graphics pen, and works in any mode.					
			Requires the X and Y co-ords and the radius to be passed					
					l registers.			
A580 DD71					;Load A with radius,			
A583 A7	170				;If radius is 0, return.			
A584 C8	180			Ζ	PC with V apport			
A585 DD41 A588 DD46				C,(IX+2) B,(IX+3)	;BC with Y co-ord,			
A588 DD40					;and DE with X co-ord.			
A58E DD56				D,(IX+5)				
A591 2600				н,0				
A593 6F	240			L,A				
A594 19	250	A	DD	HL,DE	;HL now equals X+radius.			
A595 E5	260		PUSH		;Save first two sets of starting			
A596 C5	270		PUSH		;co-ords on the stack.			
A597 E5	280		PUSH					
A598 C5	290		USH					
A599 EB	300				;Load HL with X co-ords.			
A59A E5	310		USH		;Save X and Y co-ords on stack.			
A59B C5 A59C 160	320 0 330		DSH D	D,0	;Load DE with radius,			
A59C 160	340			E,A	, ibad bi; with fadius,			
A59F A7	350			A				
A5A0 ED5					;HL now equals X-radius.			
A5A2 E5	370		USH		Save second set of starting			
A5A3 C5	380		PUSH		;co-ords on the stack.			
A5A4 E5	390		PUSH					
A5A5 C5	400		PUSH					
A5A6 CD3				SQOFA	;Let DE equal A*A.			
A5A9 D5	420		PUSII		;Save radius squared value on stack.			
	10200 430		D		;Point IX to data saved on stack.			
A5AE DD3 A5B0 3D				IX,SP A	;Decrement the X offset.			
A5B1 CD3					;Get the square of the X offset.			
A5B4 DD6				L,(IX-2)	;Load HL with radius squared.			
A5B7 DD6				H,(IX-1)	,			
A5BA A7	490			A				
A5BB ED5	2 500	S	SBC	HL,DE	;HL now equals X offset squared			
A5BD E5	510		PUSH		;minus radius squared, and moved			
A5BE FDE			POP	IY	; into IY.			
A5C0 F5	530		PUSH		;Save loop counter.			
A5C1 3E8				A,128	;This section finds the square root			
A5C3 0E4			D D	C,64	;of the value in IY. See text.			
A5C5 110 A5C8 180			R	DE,#4000 FRST				
ASCA CD3				SQOFA				
A5CD FDE		•	PUSH					
A5CF E1				HL				
A5D0 ED5				HL,DE	;NB - carry always cleared by SQOFA.			
A5D2 380			JR	C,LOWR				
A5D4 81	630		ADD .	A,C	;Double addition saves a jump.			
A5D5 81	640			A,C				
A5D6 91				C				
A5D7 CB3				C				
A5D9 20EI	F 670	J	JR	NZ,SQRLP				

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

ASDC 4F 690 LD 5.C ASDC 4F 690 LD C,A ;C contains approximate SQR IY. ASDC 1F 700 POP AF ;Retrieve loop counter. ASDC 111000 710 LD DE,16 ;Point IX to first segment data. ASDE 111000 710 LD DE,16 ;Point IX to first segment data. ASE DD66FB 730 LD L, (IX-6) ASE DF 750 LD E,A ;DE with X offset (D already 0). ASEA 19 760 ADD HL,DE ASEE DD66F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with X co-ord. ASEE DD66F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASEE DD66F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASEF DD66F8 790 LD L, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASEF DD66F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASE7 DD66F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASE7 DD66F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASE7 CL45A6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASF7 EI 830 POP HL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 A CA42 860 SRC H, BC ;HL now Y minus C ASF7 A 280 AND A ASF7 A EM42 860 SRC HL, BC ;HL now Y minus C ASF0 11FCFF 880 LD DE, 4 ;Save Y minus C ASF0 11FCFF 880 LD DE, 4 ;Save Y minus C A600 DD19 890 ADD IX, DE A600 DD19 60 ADD IX, DE A612 1600 970 LD D,0 ;Load HL with X co-ord. A644 SF 980 LD E, -3 ;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data. A610 DD19 60 ADD IX, DE A614 CD45A6 1030 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 3. A616 ED52 1000 SRC HL, DE A617 CD45A6 1030 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 3. A618 ED5 1000 SRC HL, DE A618 ED5 1000 SRC HL, DE A614 CD45A6 1030 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 3. A619 D150 ADD HL, RE ;iE now X minus offset. A619 D150 ADD HL, RE ;iE now X minus offset. A619 D150 ADD HL, DE; A4 A620 D1140 HX DD E, A4 A620 D110 EX DE; A2 A630 D019 1080 ADD IX, DE A641 D074 II 000 ADD HL, DE ;A4 A638 SF 1100 CALL PTSEC ;Plot last segment. A639 A7 H110 AND A ;Test X offset for zero. A640 POP HL C ;A4 in	4500	61	690	ID	РС	
ASDDF1700POPAFRetrieve loop counter.ASDE11000710LDDE,16;Point IX to first segment data.ASEEDD6FF730LDH,(1X-5);Load HL with X co-ord.ASE6DD6FFA740LDL,(1X-5);Load HL with X co-ord.ASE6DD6FF8750LDE,A;DE with X offset (D already 0).ASEA19760ADDHL,DE;DE now X axis positionASECDD66F79780LDH,(1X-7);Load HL with Y co-ord.ASE7DSE7ES800PUSH IL;Save Y co-ord on stack.ASF7DSF7EI800PUSH IL;iLad HL with Y co-ord, butASF8CD45A6820CALL PTSEC;Plot segment 1.ASF7EI830POPHL;iLe now Y axis position.ASF7EI830POPHL;iLad HL with Y co-ord, butASF8CD45A6820CALL PTSEC;Plot segment 2.ASF0DS840PUSH DE;Move IX pointer to nextASF0DS840PUSH DE;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.A600DD19930ADDIX,DEA601DD66FF930LDH,(1X-1)A603CD45A6910CALL PTSEC;Plot segment 2.A604D56FF930LDH,(1X-1)A605D166FF930LDH,(1X-1)A604D56FF930LDH,(1X-1)<	A5DB	41 45	680 690		B,C	C contains annuinata COD TV
ASDE 11000 710 LD DE,16 :Point IX to first segment data. ASE DD66FB 730 LD H, (IX-5) :Load HL with X co-ord. ASE5 DD66FA 740 LD L, (IX-6) ;E ;E with X offset (D already 0). ASEA 19 760 ADD HL, DE ;E with X offset (D already 0). ASEA 19 760 ADD HL, DE ;E with X offset (D already 0). ASEA 19 760 ADD HL, DE ;E mow X axis position ASEF D666F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASF ASE 800 PUSH HL, SE ;Plot segment 1. ;Asep or the stack. ASF ASF 810 DE ;Auge or or or stack. ;Asep or or or stack. ASF SO AND HL, BC ;HL now Y minus C ;Asep or or or or stack. ASF ASF SO AND A ;Save Y minus C ASF						
ASE: DD19 720 ADD IX, DE ASE: DD6FP3 740 LD L, (IX-6) ASE DD6FP3 740 LD L, (IX-6) ASE DD6FP3 RD HL, DE ;DE with X offset (D already 0). ASE DD6FP3 RD HL, HL ;DE now X axis position ASE DD6FP3 RD HL, IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASF7 ES 800 PUSH HL ;Save Y co-ord on stack. ASF7 E1 830 POP HL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 CALAL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASF8 ASF7 E1 830 POP HL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 E5 840 PUSH HL ;Keep it on the stack. ASF9 AT 850 AND A ;Save Y minus C ASF0 D5 870 PUSH DE ;Move Y minus C ASF0 D5 870 PUSH DE ;Plot segment 2. A600 D19 90 ADD H., (IX-1) A601 D19						
ASES DD66FB 730 ID I, (IX-5) ;Load HL with X co-ord. ASES DD6EFA 740 ID L, (IX-6) ;DE with X offset (D already 0). ASEA 19 760 ADD HL, DE ;DE now X axis position ASEE DE FR ;DE now X axis position ;DE now X axis position ASEC DD66F8 790 LD H, (IX-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASFA CASA6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASFA CASA6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASFA CASA6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASFA EV42 860 SEC ;Move IX pointer to next. ASFA EV42 860 DE ;Move IX pointer to segment 3. A600 D19 890 ADD IX, DE ;Move IX pointer to segment 3. A601 DD6FF 930 LD H, (IX-1) ;Load HL with X co-ord. A602 D19 PO9 PD ;E Move IX pointer to segment 3. A610 D19 PO0 LD L, (I						, round in to illist segment data.
ASE6DOGEPA740LDL, (IX-6)LDLe kit AControl of the second of the						·Lord HI with V co-ord
ASE9SF750LDE.A;DE with X offset (D already 0).ASEA19760ADDHL,DE;DE now X axis positionASEBEB770EXDE,HL;DE now X axis positionASECDD66F9780LDH,(IX-7);Load HL with Y co-ord.ASFDD6F8790LDL,(IX-8)ASF2ES800PUSH HL;Save Y co-ord on stack.ASF3O9810ADDHL,RCASF4CD45A6820CALL PTSEC;Plor segment 1.ASF5E1830POP HL;Load HL with Y co-ord, butASF6E5840PUSH HL;Save Y co-ord on stack.ASF7E1830ADDHL,RCASF7E1830ADDHL,RCASF7E142860SBCHL now Y minus CASF7ASF7850AND AASF8E142860SBCASF011FCFF880LDDE,-4A600DD19990ADD IX,DEA602D1900POP DEA603CD4566910CALL PTSECA604D06FF9930LDL,(IX-2)A605BFF930LDD, exA616DD19960ADDIX,DEA616ED52100SBCHL,DEA616ED52100SBCHL,DEA616ED521000SBCHL,DEA616ED54103			m (n			, Load HE with A CO-Old.
ASEA 19 760 ADD HL, DE DECRET DE						DE with X offrot (D already ())
ASEE EB 770 EX DE,HL ;DE now X axis position ASEC DD66F8 780 LD H,(1X-7) ;Lad HL with Y co-ord. ASF2 D56F8 790 LD L,(1X-8) ;Save Y co-ord on stack. ASF3 09 810 ADD HL, BC ;HL now Y axis position. ASF4 CA5A6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASF4 CA5A6 820 PUSH HL ;keep it on the stack. ASF8 E5 840 PUSH DE ;blow Y minus C ASFA EM24 860 SRC HL,BC ;HL now Y minus C ASFC D5 870 PUSH DE ;bvow IX pointer to next. A560 D16 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 2. ;segment 2. A600 D19 880 ADD IX,DE ;ave Y minus C A601 D6/6FF 930 LD L,(1X-2) ;Add A610 D19 960 ADD IX,DE ;Adel						, be wren & offset (D alleady U).
ASEC D066F9 780 LD H, (X-7) ;Load HL with Y co-ord. ASEF D06EF8 790 LD L, (X-8) ASF2 E5 800 PUSH HL ;Save Y co-ord on stack. ASF3 CP45A6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASF4 CP45A6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASF7 E1 830 POP ILL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 E54 840 PUSH ILL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF7 E1 830 PUSH ILL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 E54 840 PUSH ILL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF7 D5 870 PUSH DE ;Wer y printer to next. ASF0 D5 870 PUSH DE ;Plot segment 2. A600 D19 890 ADD IX,DE ;Save Y minus C A610 D19 900 POF DE ;A00 ;Dod HL with X co-ord. A610 D19 900 LD L, (X-7) ;Load HL with X co-ord. A610 D19 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>DF now X axis position</td>						DF now X axis position
ASEF D06EF8 790 LD L,(IX-8) Save Y co-ord on stack. ASF3 09 B10 ADD HL, BC ;HL now Y axis position. ASF4 CD45A6 820 CALL PTSEG ;Plot segment 1. ASF4 CD45A6 820 CALL PTSEG ;Plot segment 1. ASF7 E1 830 POP ILL ;Lade HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 E5 840 PUSH HL ;keep it on the stack. ASF7 ASF7 B50 AND A - ;segment's data. A600 ASF7 D50 ADD E, - ;segment's data. A600 D19 890 ADD IX,DE A600 D19 890 ADD IX,DE ;segment's data. A600 D19 A60. CALL PTSEG ;Plot segment 2. A600 D19 900 ADD IX,DE ;Load HL with X co-ord. A60. A610 D19 GA ADD IX,DE ;Addata. A61. A61. AGD Addata. A616						
ASF2 E5 800 PUSH HL ;Save Y co-ord on stack. ASF3 CP45A6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Hor wy axis position. ASF7 CP45A6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Hor wy axis position. ASF7 E1 830 POP HL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 E5 840 PUSH HL ;keep it on the stack. ASF7 AT 850 AND A ;segment's data. ASF6 D5 870 PUSH DE ;Move IX pointer to next ASF7 D1 900 POD DE ;Move IX pointer to next A600 D19 890 ADD H,(IX-2) ;Add HL with X co-ord. A601 D66FF 930 LD H,(IX-2) ;Add HL with X co-ord. A604 D66FF 930 LD H,(IX-2) ;Add HL with X offset. A610 D19 960 ADD IX,DE ;Aver Y minus C A614 SF 980 LD E, A ;Add HL with X offset. A616 ED52 1000 SEC HL,DC ;Load DE with X offset. A616 ED52 1000 <td< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>, bodd in with i co-old.</td></td<>						, bodd in with i co-old.
ASF3 09 810 ADD HL, BC HL now Y axis position. ASF4 CD45A6 820 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 1. ASF7 E1 830 POP HL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 E5 840 PUSH HL ;keep it on the stack. ASF7 ED42 860 SBC HL, BC ;HL now Y minus C ASF7 ED42 860 SBC HL, BC ;HL now Y minus C ASF7 ED42 860 SBC HL, BC ;HL now Y minus C ASF0 D1F0FF 880 LD DE, -4 ;segment's data. A600 DD19 890 ADD IX, DE ;Plot segment 2. A603 CD45A6 910 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 2. A604 DD6FFF 930 LD H, (IX-1) ;Load HL with X co-ord. A610 DD19 960 ADD IX, DE ;Aota HL with X offset. A614 SF 980 LD E, A ;Aota HL with X offset. A614 SF 980 LD E, HL, E ;Be now X minus offset. A616 ED52 1000						:Save Y co-ord on stack
ASF4CD45A6820CALL PTSEC:Plot segment 1.ASF7E1830POPIL:Load HL with Y co-ord, butASF8E5840PUSH HL:keep it on the stack.ASF7AT850AND AASFAED42860SBC HL,BC:HL now Y minus CASFCD5870PUSH DE:Move IX pointer to nextASFD11FCFF880LDDE,-4:segment's data.A600D019890ADD IX,DE:Move IX pointer to nextA602D1900POP DE:Plot segment 2.A603CD45A6910CALL PTSEC:Plot segment 2.A604DD6FF930LDH,(IX-1):Load HL with X co-ord.A605A605P20PUSH HL:Save Y minus CA607DD66FF930LDDF,-8:Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.A610D19960ADD IX,DE:Load DE with X offset.A614SF980LDE,AA615ED521000SRC HL,DE:Retrieve Y minus C.A614SF980LDE,AA618ED511030CALL PTSEC:Plot segment 3.A619E11040POP HL:Get Y co-ord from stack.A618ED511060ADD IX,DE:Plot last segment.A619E11040POP HL:Get Y co-ord from stack.A619E11040POP HL:Get Y co-ord from stack.A619<						
ASF7 El 830 POP HL ;Load HL with Y co-ord, but ASF8 ES 840 PUSH HL ;keep it on the stack. ASF7 ASF0 AS0 AND A ASF7 EM ES0 AND A ASF7 D Sto AND A ASF7 D Sto AND A ASF7 D Sto MAN A ASF7 D Sto MAN A ASF0 DIS E ;Move IX pointer to next ASF0 D19 890 ADD IX, DE A600 D19 890 ADD IX, DE A601 DD66FF 930 LD H, IX-1) ;Load HL with X co-ord. A610 DD19 960 ADD IX, DE A610 D19 960 ADD IX, DE A611 SF 980 LD D, 0 ;Load HL with X co-ord. A614 ES 900 ADD A A615 D5 900 ADD A A616 ED52 1000<	A5F4	CD45A6				
ASF8E5840PUSH HL;keep it on the stack.ASF7ASF0AND AASFAED42860SEC HL, BC;HL now Y minus CASFAED42860DE4;segment's data.A600DD19890ADD IX, DEA602D1900POP DEA603CD45A6910CALL PTSEC;Plot segment 2.A606E5920PUSH HL;Save Y minus CA607DD66FF930LD H, (IX-1);Load HL with X co-ord.A608DD66FF930LD DF, -8;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.A610DD19960ADD IX, DEA6111600970LD D, 0;Load DE with X offset.A6121600970LD D, 0;Load DE with X offset.A618EB1010EXDE, HL;Retrieve Y minus C.A618EB1010EXDE, HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A619E11020POP HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A618D191080ADD IX, DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE, -4A6211600PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A619E11040POP HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A618D9191080ADD IX, DEA6191080ADD IX, DEA62011FCFF1000CALL PTSECA6211090POP DEA622D1991080<						
ASF9 A7 850 AND A ASFA ED42 860 SBC HL, BC ;HL now Y minus C ASFC D5 870 PUSH DE ;Move IX pointer to next. A600 DD19 890 ADD IX, DE A600 DD19 890 ADD IX, DE A601 D00 POP DE ;Segment's data. A602 D1 900 POP DE ;A603 CD45A6 A603 CD45A6 910 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 2. A604 DD6FF 930 LD H, (IX-1) ;Load HL with X co-ord. A607 DD6FF 930 LD D, [X, DE ;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data. A610 DD19 960 ADD IX, DE ;A614 SF 980 LD E, A A614 5F 980 LD E, A ;A614 SF 980 LD E, A A618 EB 1010 EX E, HL ;DE now X minus offset. A618 EB 1030 CALL PTSE						
ASFA ED42 860 SRC HL,BC ;HL now Y minus C ASFC D5 870 PUSH DE ;Move IX pointer to next ASFD D1PFCFF 880 LD DE,-4 ;segment's data. A600 DD19 890 ADD IX,DE ;segment's data. A603 CD45A6 910 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 2. A604 DD66FF 930 LD H,(IX-1) ;Load HL with X co-ord. A604 DD66FF 930 LD H,(IX-2) ;Aod HL with X co-ord. A600 D19 960 ADD IX,DE ;Aod HL with X offset. A610 DD19 960 ADD IX,DE ;Aod DE with X offset. A612 1600 970 LD D,0 ;Load DE with X offset. A615 A7 990 AND A A616 ED52 1000 SEC HL,DE ;Plot segment 3. A618 EB 1010 EX EX rever Y minus C. A614 CD45A6 1030 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 3. A616 ED5 100 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 3.	A5F9	A7	850			, the first of the bedent
ASFCD5870PUSH DE:Move IX pointer to nextASFD11FCFF880LDDE,-4;segment's data.A600DD19990POPDEA603CD45A6910CALL PTSEC;Plot segment 2.A606E5920PUSH HL;Save Y minus CA607DD66FF930LDH,(IX-1);Load HL with X co-ord.A60ADD6FFF930LDA601DD19960ADD IX,DE;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.A610DD19960ADD IX,DE;Load DE with X offset.A614SF980LDE,AA615A7990AND AA616ED521000SBC HL,DEA618EB1010EX DE;HL;DE now X minus offset.A619E11020POP HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A618E31010EX DE;HL;DE now Y plus C.A618A616D51060PUSH DEA619D11040POP HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A619D11080ADD IX,DEA62011FCFF1070LD DE,-4A621D190DB0ADD IX,DEA622D191080ADD IX,DEA624CD45A61100CALL PTSECA625D11090POP DEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSECA627A71110AND AA628C24051120JP NZ,DRWLP	A5FA	ED42	860	SBC		HL now Y minus C
ASFD IFCFF 880 LD DE, -4 ;segment's data. A600 DD19 890 ADD IX, DE Added A602 D1 900 POP DE Added Added A603 CD45A6 910 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 2. A606 D5 920 PUSH HL ;Save Y minus C A607 DD66FF 930 LD L,(IX-2) A600 DD6FFF 940 LD L,(IX-2) A610 DD19 960 ADD IX,DE A614 5F 980 LD D,0 ;Load DE with X offset. A616 ED52 1000 SBC HL,DE ;Retrieve Y minus C. A618 EB 1010 EX DE,HL ;Cet Y co-ord from stack. A616 ED52 1000 SBC HL,DE ;Point IX to last data block. A618 A618 D5 1060 PUSH DE ;Point IX to last data block. A622 11FCFF 1070 LD DE,-4 A621 IFCF 1070 <td< td=""><td>A5FC</td><td>D5</td><td>870</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></td<>	A5FC	D5	870			
A600DD19390ADDIX,DEA602D1900POPDEA603CD45A6910CALL <ptsec< td="">;Plot segment 2.A607DD66FF930LDH,(IX-1)A607DD66FF930LDH,(IX-1)A600DD6FF930LDL,(IX-2)A600D1F8FF950LDDE,-8A610DD19960ADDIX,DEA612I600970LDD,0A6145F980LDE,AA615A7990ANDAA616ED521000SBCHL,DEA618EB1010EXDE,HLA618EB1010EXDE,HLA618CD45A61030CALL<ptsec< td="">A619E11020POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A618D51060PUSR DEA619D11050ADDA62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA624CP45A61100CALL<ptsec< td="">A625D1090POPA626CP45A61100CALL<ptsec< td="">A6271110ANDAA628CP45A61100CALL<ptsec< td="">A6291100A624C9<t< td=""><td>A5FD</td><td>11FCFF</td><td>880</td><td>LD</td><td>DE,-4</td><td>segment's data.</td></t<></ptsec<></ptsec<></ptsec<></ptsec<></ptsec<>	A5FD	11FCFF	880	LD	DE,-4	segment's data.
A603CD45A6910CALL PTSEC;Plot segment 2.A606E5920PUSH HL;Save Y minus CA607DD66FF930LDH.(IX-1)A60ADD6EFE940LDL.(IX-2)A60D11F8FF950LDDE8A610DD19960ADD IX,DEA6121600970LDD.0A6145F980LDE,AA615A7990AND AA616ED521000SBC HL,DEA618EB1010EXDE,HLA618EB1010EXDE,HLA614Cb45A61030CALL PTSECA618EB1040POP HLCALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A618Cb11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A618C91050A0DHL,BC;HL now Y plus C.A617D51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADD IX,DEA626Ch45A61100CALL PTSEGCH426POP PEA6271110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A628A71110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A62911400130LD E,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD19	A600	DD19	890	ADD		
A606E5920PUSH HL;Save Y minus CA607DD66FF930LDH,(IX-1);Load HL with X co-ord.A60ADD6EFE940LDL,(IX-2);Load HL with X co-ord.A60DDIPSFF950LDDE,-8;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.A610DD19960ADDIX,DEA6145F980LDD,0;Load DE with X offset.A615A7990ANDAA616ED521000SBCHL,PEA618EB1010EXDE,HL;DE now X minus offset.A618EB1010EXDE,HL;DE now X minus C.A614CD45A61030CALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A610E11040POP HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A617D91050ADD HL,BC;HL now Y plus C.A618D51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A6211090POP DEA626CD45A6A6221190080ADD IX,DE;Restore the stack pointer toA624C2BA51120JPNZ,DRWLP;If not, another pass.A620A1FCFF100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Restore the stack pointer toA627A71110ANDA;Test X offset for zero.A628A71100LD <t< td=""><td>A602</td><td>D1</td><td>900</td><td>POP</td><td></td><td></td></t<>	A602	D1	900	POP		
A606E5920PUSH HL;Save Y minus CA607DD66FF930LDH,(IX-1);Load HL with X co-ord.A60ADD6EFE940LDL,(IX-2)A60D11F8FF950LDDE,-8;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.A610DD19960ADDIX,DEA6115F980LDE,AA6121600970LDD,0;Load DE with X offset.A6145F980LDE,AA615A7990AND AA616ED521000SBC HL,DEA618EB1010EXDE,HLCA19E11020POP HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A614CD45A61030CALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A615A1C045A61030CALL PTSEGA616E11040POP HL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A6175D1060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A623DD191080ADD IX,DEA624CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A625D11090POP DEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A627D110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A628A71110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A629114001130LDDE,20A631DD191140ADD IX,DEA632DDF91150 <td>A603</td> <td>CD45A6</td> <td>910</td> <td>CALL</td> <td>PTSEG</td> <td>;Plot segment 2.</td>	A603	CD45A6	910	CALL	PTSEG	;Plot segment 2.
A60ADD6EFE940LDL, (IX-2)A60D11F8FF950LDDE, -8;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.A610DD19960ADDIX,DEA6121600970LDD,0;Load DE with X offset.A6145F980LDE,AA615A7990AND AA616ED521000SBCIL,DEA618EB1010EXDE,HLA619E11020POPHLRetrieve Y minus C.A614CD45A61030CALL PTSEGA615D91050ADDHL,BCA616E01050ADDHL,BCA617D91050ADDHL,BCA618D91050ADDHL,BCA619E11040POPHLGet Y co-ord from stack.A617D91050ADDA618D91050ADDA629IFCFF1070LDD191080ADDA624C240A51100C4LL PTSEGFlot last segment.A625D11090POPA624C240A51100A625D11090POPPX2,DRMLP;If not, another pass.A625111401130LDA626CP45A61100A627ADDIL, PEA630DD191140A634C91160RET <td>A606</td> <td>E5</td> <td>920</td> <td>PUSH</td> <td>HL</td> <td></td>	A606	E5	920	PUSH	HL	
A60A DD6EFE 940 LD L, (IX-2) A60D D1F8FF 950 LD DE, -8 ;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data. A610 D019 960 ADD IX,DE ;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data. A612 1600 970 LD D,0 ;Load DE with X offset. A614 5F 980 LD E,A A615 A7 990 AND A A616 ED52 1000 SEC HL, NE A618 EB 1010 EX DE,HL ;Betrieve Y minus Offset. A618 EB 1010 EX DE,HL ;Betrieve Y minus C. A618 CD45A6 1030 CALL PTSEC ;Plot segment 3. A619 E1 1040 POP HL ;Get Y co-ord from stack. A618 09 1050 ADD HL,BC ;HL now Y plus C. A619 E1 1040 POF DE A620 117CFF 1070 LD DE,-4 A625 D1 1090 POP DE	A607	DD66FF	930	LD	H,(IX-1)	Load HL with X co-ord.
A610DD19960ADDIX, DENote in pointer to begin to b	A60A	DD6EFE	940	LD		
A610DD19960ADDIX,DEA6121600970LDD,0;Load DE with X offset.A6145F980LDE,AA615A7990AND AA616ED521000SBCHL,DEA618EB1010EXDE,HL;DE now X minus offset.A619E11020POPHL;Retrieve Y minus C.A61ACD45A61030CALL <ptsec< td="">;Plot segment 3.A61DE11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A61BO91050ADDHL,RC;HL now Y plus C.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA624CD45A61100CALL<ptsec< td="">;Plot last segment.A625A71110ANDA;Test X offset for zero.A620114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQ0FALDA637671190LDH,AA638SF1200LDE,AA63916001210LD</ptsec<></ptsec<>	A60D	11F8FF	950	LD	DE,-8	;Move IX pointer to segment 3 data.
A6145F980LDE,AA615A7990ANDAA616ED521000SBCHL,DEA618EB1010EXDE,HL;DE now X minus offset.A618EB1010EXDE,HL;Retrieve Y minus C.A614CD45A61030CALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A61DE11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A623DD191080ADDHL,BC;HL now Y plus C.A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A627A71110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A628C2B0A51120JPNZ,DRWLPA629A71110AND A;Test x offset for zero.A6201114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA638SF1200LDE,AA638SF1200LDE,AA638SF1200LDE,AA638G01120LDL,OA63916001210LDD,OA638G7190LDH,A	A610	DD19	960	ADD	IX,DE	. 0
A615A7990AND AA616ED521000SBCHL, DEA618EB1010EXDE, HL;DE now X minus offset.A618EB1020POPHL;Retrieve Y minus C.A619E11020POPHL;Retrieve Y minus C.A614CD45A61030CALLPTSEG;Plot segment 3.A610E11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A616O91050ADDHL, BC;HL now Y plus C.A617D51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A623DD191080ADDIX, DEA625D11090POP DEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEGA627A71110AND AA628C2B0A51120JPNZ, DRWLP;If not, another pass.A620D191140A100IX, DEA632DDF91150LDSP, IXA634C91160RETRET;Return to BASIC1170;A6352E00LDLDLDAA638SF1200LDE,AA638G6081220LDB,8(Counter for all powers of 2.A638G6081220LDB,8(Counter for all powers of 2.A638G6081220LD <tr< td=""><td></td><td></td><td>970</td><td>LD</td><td>D,0</td><td>;Load DE with X offset.</td></tr<>			970	LD	D,0	;Load DE with X offset.
A616ED521000SBCHL, DEA618EB1010EXDE, HL;DE now X minus offset.A619E11020POPHL;Retrieve Y minus C.A61ACD45A61030CALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A61DE11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A61E091050ADDHL, BC;HL now Y plus C.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE, -4A623DD191080ADDIX, DEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A627A71110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A628C2B0A51120JPNZ, DRWLP;If not, another pass.A620D191140ADDIX, DE;its original condition.A630DD191140ADDIX, DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP, IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDE,A;and bottom 8 bits of DE.A6386081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A6386081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A63830011240JR <t< td=""><td>A614</td><td>5F</td><td>980</td><td>LD</td><td>E,A</td><td></td></t<>	A614	5F	980	LD	E,A	
A618EB1010EXDE,HL;DE now X minus offset.A619E11020POPHL;Retrieve Y minus C.A61ACD45A61030CALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A61DE11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A61E091050ADDHL,BC;HL now Y plus C.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A629A71110ANDA;Test X offset for zero.A620114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDE,A;and bottom 8 bits of DE.A6386081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A631291230SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A632291230SHIFTADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.	A615	A7	990	AND	A	
A619E11020POPHL;Retrieve Y minus C.A61ACD45A61030CALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A61DE11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A61E091050ADDHL,BC;HL now Y plus C.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA624CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A627A71110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A628C2B0A51120JPNZ,DRWLP;If not, another pass.A620114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180 SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDE,A;and bottom 8 bits of DE.A6386081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A6316001210LDD,0ADDA6320291230SHIFTADDHL,HLA638			1000	SBC	HL,DE	
A61ACD45A61030CALL PTSEG;Plot segment 3.A61DE11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A61E091050ADDHL, BC;HL now Y plus C.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE, 4A623DD191080ADDIX, DEA625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEC;Plot last segment.A627A71110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A628C2B0A51120JPNZ, DRWLP;If not, another pass.A629A71110ADDIX, DE;its original condition.A629A71160RET;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX, DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP, IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL, pA638SF1200LDE, A;and bottom 8 bits of DE.A6386081220LDB, 8;Counter for all powers of 2.A631291230SHIFTADDHL, HLA63230011240JRNC, DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL, DE;			1010		DE,HL	;DE now X minus offset.
A61DE11040POPHL;Get Y co-ord from stack.A61E091050ADDHL,BC;HL now Y plus C.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG;Plot last segment.A629A71110ANDA;Test X offset for zero.A624C2B0A51120JPNZ,DRWLP;If not, another pass.A62D1114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDE,A;and bottom 8 bits of DE.A6386081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A631291230SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A63230011240JRNC,DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.						Retrieve Y minus C.
A61E091050ADDHL, BC;HL now Y plus C.A61FD51060PUSH DE;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE, -4A623DD191080ADDIX, DEA625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALLPTSECA627AT110ANDAA628C2B0A51120JPNZ, DRWLPA629A71110ANDAA620114001130LDDE, 20A621114001130LDDE, 20A632DDF91150LDSP, IXA634C91160RETA637671190LDL, 0A6385F1200LDL, 0A6386001210LDD, 0A6386081220LDB, 8A632291230SHIFTADDA632291230SHIFTADDA632191240JRNC, DONE?A634191250ADDHL, HLA635291230SHIFTA636191240JRA637191250ADDA6381240JRNC, DONE?A63916011240JRA634191250ADDA6351240JRA636191250ADDHL,					PTSEG	;Plot segment 3.
A61FD51060PUSH DE PUSH DE LD;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALLPTSEGA627AT1110ANDAA628C280A51120JPNZ,DRWLPA629A71110ANDAA624C280A51120JPNZ,DRWLPA625D191140ADDLDDE,20A630DD191140ADDIX,DEA632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDH,AA6386081220LDD,0A63806081220LDB,8A630291230SHIFTADDA63230011240JRNC,DONE?A634191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DE					HL	;Get Y co-ord from stack.
A61FD51060PUSH DE PUSH DE LD;Point IX to last data block.A62011FCFF1070LDDE,-4A623DD191080ADDIX,DEA625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALLPTSEGA627AT1110ANDAA628C280A51120JPNZ,DRWLPA629A71110ANDAA624C280A51120JPNZ,DRWLPA625D191140ADDLDDE,20A630DD191140ADDIX,DEA632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDH,AA6386081220LDD,0A63806081220LDB,8A630291230SHIFTADDA63230011240JRNC,DONE?A634191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DEA641191250ADDHL,DE						;HL now Y plus C.
A623DD191080ADDIX, DEA625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALLPTSEC;Plot last segment.A629A71110ANDA;Test X offset for zero.A62AC2B0A51120JPNZ, DRWLP;If not, another pass.A62D1114001130LDDE, 20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX, DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP, IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170<;						;Point IX to last data block.
A625D11090POPDEA626CD45A61100CALLPTSEG;Plot last segment.A629A71110ANDA;Test X offset for zero.A624C2B0A51120JPNZ,DRWLP;If not, another pass.A6201114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDH,AA6386001210LDD,0A63806081220LDB,8A630291230SHIFTADDA63230011240JRNC,DONE?A634191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640orginal value to L.ADD						
A626CD45A61100CALL PTSEG:Plot last segment.A629A71110AND A;Test X offset for zero.A62AC2B0A51120JPNZ,DRWLP;If not, another pass.A62D1114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A638SF1200LDH,AA6386001210LDD,0A63806081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A631291230SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A63230011240JRNC,DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.	-	-				
A629A71110ANDA;Test X offset for zero.A62AC2B0A51120JPNZ,DRWLP;If not, another pass.A62D1114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A637671190LDH,AA638SF1200LDE,A;and bottom 8 bits of DE.A63806081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A631291230SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A63230011240JRNC,DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.						-1 - 1
A62AC2B0A51120JPNZ,DRWLP; If not, another pass.A62D1114001130LDDE,20; Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE; its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET; Return to BASIC1170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,O; Put A in top 8 bits of HL,A638SF1200LDA6386001210LDD,OA63806081220LDB,8; Counter for all powers of 2.A63230011240JRA634191250ADDHL, PE; Add orginal value to L.						
A62D1114001130LDDE,20;Restore the stack pointer toA630DD191140ADDIX,DE;its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return toB6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A637671190LDH,AA638SF1200LDE,AA63916001210LDD,0A63806081220LDB,8(Counter for all powers of 2.A63029A63230011240JRNC,DONE?A640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDHL,DEA640191250ADDA640191250ADDA640191250ADDA640191250ADDA640191250ADDA640191250ADDA640191250ADDA6401601210120A640191250ADDA640191250 </td <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>						
A630DD191140ADDIX, DE; its original condition.A632DDF91150LDSP, IXA634C91160RET; Return to BASIC 1170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A637671190LDH,AA6385F1200LDE,A; and bottom 8 bits of DE.A63916001210LDD,0A63806081220LDB,8; Counter for all powers of 2.A63230011240JRNC,DONE?; If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE; Add orginal value to L.						
A632DDF91150LDSP,IXA634C91160RET;Return to BASIC1170:Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180SQOFALDL,0A637671190LDH,AA6385F1200LDE,A; and bottom 8 bits of DE.A63916001210LDD,0A63B06081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A63D291230SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A63E30011240JRNC,DONE?; If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.						
A634C91160RET;Return to BASIC 1170 ;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180 SQOFALDL,0;Put A in top 8 bits of HL,A637671190LDH,AA6385F1200LDE,A;and bottom 8 bits of DE.A63916001210LDD,0A63806081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A630291230 SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A63230011240JRNC,DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.						;its original condition.
1170;Subroutine to load DE with A*AA6352E001180 SQOFALDL,0A637671190LDH,AA6385F1200LDE,AA63916001210LDD,OA63806081220LDB,8(A630291230 SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A63830011240JRNC,DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.						BASIC
A635 2E00 1180 SQOFA LD L,0 ;Put A in top 8 bits of HL, A637 67 1190 LD H,A A638 5F 1200 LD E,A ;and bottom 8 bits of DE. A639 1600 1210 LD D,0 A638 6608 1220 LD B,8 ;Counter for all powers of 2. A630 29 1230 SHIFT ADD HL,HL ;Shifts HL one bit left. A632 3001 1240 JR NC,DONE? ;If no power in carry, jump. A640 19 1250 ADD HL,DE ;Add orginal value to L.	A034	69				
A637 67 1190 LD H,A A638 5F 1200 LD E,A ; and bottom 8 bits of DE. A639 1600 1210 LD D,0 A638 608 1220 LD B,8 ;Counter for all powers of 2. A630 29 1230 SHIFT ADD HL,HL ;Shifts HL one bit left. A632 3001 1240 JR NC,DONE? ;If no power in carry, jump. A640 19 1250 ADD HL,DE ;Add orginal value to L.	4635	2500				
A638 5F 1200 LD E,A ; and bottom 8 bits of DE. A639 1600 1210 LD D,O A638 0608 1220 LD B,8 ; Counter for all powers of 2. A63D 29 1230 SHIFT ADD HL,HL ; Shifts HL one bit left. A63E 3001 1240 JR NC,DONE? ; If no power in carry, jump. A640 19 1250 ADD HL,DE ; Add orginal value to L.						FUL A IN LOP O DILS OF ML,
A639 1600 1210 LD D,0 A63B 0608 1220 LD B,8 ;Counter for all powers of 2. A63D 29 1230 SHIFT ADD HL,HL ;Shifts HL one bit left. A63E 3001 1240 JR NC,DONE? ;If no power in carry, jump. A640 19 1250 ADD HL,DE ;Add orginal value to L.		-				and bottom 8 bits of DE
A63B06081220LDB,8;Counter for all powers of 2.A63D291230 SHIFTADDHL,HL;Shifts HL one bit left.A63E30011240JRNC,DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.						Janu DOLLON O DIES OF DE.
A63D291230 SHIFTADDHL,HL;ShiftsHL one bit left.A63E30011240JRNC,DONE?;If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE;Add orginal value to L.						Counter for all powers of 2
A63E30011240JRNC,DONE?; If no power in carry, jump.A640191250ADDHL,DE; Add orginal value to L.						-
A640 19 1250 ADD HL, DE ; Add orginal value to L.						
		"				
iven ize bone: bunz shiri ; lest for further powers.						
	N041	IOLU	1200 DOINE!	DUNZ	501111	; lest for further powers.

A643 A644	EB C9	1270 1280	EX RET	DE,HL	;answer into DE.
		1290 :		utine to d	raw from present position
					co-ordinates
A645	F5 .	1310 PTSEG	PŬSH		;Save almost everything!
A646	C5	1320	PUSH	BC	;(The ROM routines corrupt
A647	D5	1330	PUSH	DE	;(AF, BC, DE and HL.)
A648	E5	1340	PUSH	HL	
A649	DD6E00	1350	LD	L.(IX+0)	;Get last point drawn to.
A64C	DD6601	1360	LD	H,(IX+1)	
A64F	DD5E02	1370	LD	E,(IX+2)	
A652	DD5603	1380	LD	$D_{1}(IX+3)$	
A655	CDCOBB	1390	CALL	#BBC0	;Move graphics cursor there.
A658	El	1400	POP	HL	;Get new position from stack,
A659	D1	1410	POP	DE	
A65A	DD7500	1420	LD	(IX+0),L	;save in data area,
A65D	DD7401	1430	LD	(IX+1),H	
A660	DD7302	1440	LD	(IX+2),E	
A663	DD7203	1450	LD	(IX+3),D	
A666	D5	1460	PUSH	DE	;and put back on stack.
A667	E5	1470	PUSH		
A668	CDF6BB	1480	CALL	#BBF6	;Draw line to new position.
A66B	El	1490	POP	HL	;Salvage register contents.
A66C	D1	1500	POP	DE	
A66D	C1	1510	POP	BC	
A66E	F1	1520	POP	AF	
A66F	C9	1530	RET		

have the X and Y values added to or subtracted from them.

To construct a circle we need to find the value of Y for each value of X from the origin to the radius. These co-ordinates, plus those from the other three quadrants, are the points around the edge of the circle.

If we were simply to plot the values, the result would not be a continuous circle — where a change of one unit of X resulted in a larger change in Y, a series of unconnected dots would result. The way round the problem is to draw lines from one point to the next, but this involves us storing the co-ordinates of the last point drawn to of each quadrant — 8 co-ordinates, 16 bytes. *Circle* uses the stack area to store these values.

Circle machine code in detail

Lines 160-250 fetch the integer parameters sent by BASIC (X%,Y% and R%); they are then used to calculate the starting co-ordinates of the first two quadrants which are pushed onto the stack. The co-ordinates of the origin are stacked, and then the third and fourth sets of starting co-ordinates are calculated and pushed. The final piece of data which we wish to store is the value R*R, so that we don't have to calculate it each time we need it: we will use subroutine SQOFA (SQuare OF A), more of which in a moment.

We now have a number of important values stored on the stack; in order to be able to access these easily, IX is pointed to (SP+2) by the instructions LD

IX,2: ADD IX,SP (lines 430-440). We can now get at our data by the use of the index instructions.

Multiplying in binary

SQOFA (lines 1180-1320) is used a number of times. Its purpose is to multiply the value in A by itself and return with the answer in DE, but it can easily be modified to act as a general purpose multiply routine. First look at this binary multiplication:

 Decimal
 Binary

 137
 10001001

 *5
 00000101

 137 (times 1)
 10001001

 +548 (times 4)
 1000100100

 =685
 1010101101

Study this with care. In order to multiply 137 by five it is first multiplied by one, and to this is added 137 multiplied by four. It is easy to multiply by four in binary, it's just like multiplying by 100 in decimal. We simply move all the digits two spaces to the left and add two zeroes. We know it should be multiplied by four because bit 2 of the second value, five, is set. Similarly, to multiply a number, N, by 137, we split the sum into

 $N^*137 = N^*(128 + 8 + 1)$

and multiplication by 128 and 8 is simply a matter of shifting digits and adding trailing zeroes in binary. Notice that we can easily see how to break any binary number into these component parts — it's just a case of looking to see which bits are set. We can therefore carry out multiplication in machine code by shifting bits and using addition.

Lines 1180-1210 load H and E with A, and L and D with 0. The B register is to be used as a counter, and it will be decremented by one for each power that is processed. SHIFT, line 1230, adds HL to itself; this has the effect of shifting the contents one bit left as it is in effect, a multiply-by-two operation. The MSB of H moves into the carry. The first pass of the loop will indicate whether A will need to be multiplied by the eighth power of two: if this is the case, DE is added to HL, although this will only perform ADD L,E (but register a carry in bit 0 of H) as D contains zero.

Line 1260, DONE? decrements and tests the loop counter — the loop is performed eight times. Each time the ADD HL,HL instruction is performed,

the value in E will be shifted left one bit — at the end of the loop, the value that we added to E on the first pass (either A or nothing) will have been shifted left eight times; it will occupy the top eight bits of the HL pair and will, in effect, have been multiplied by 256.

During subsequent passes, the lower bits of the original value of H will be shifted into the carry, causing further additions of E to L; these will be shifted left the correct number of times so that, eventually, HL contains A^*A . EX DE,HL moves the answer for the convenience of the rest of the program, and then a RET instruction is carried out.

You can modify SQOFA to multiply any eight-bit numbers together. The principle can also be extended to deal with larger numbers, but remember that the answer may well overflow a register pair — a 16-bit value multiplied by an eight-bit value may result in up to a 24-bit number; 16-bit*16-bit=32 bits, and so on.

Calculating the co-ordinates

Let us now look at the main body of the circle routine, which is a loop beginning at line 450. The X co-ordinate offset, held in A, is taken as the loop counter, and begins at one less than the radius. X^*X is calculated with the aid of SQOFA, and this value is subtracted from the R*R value, retrieved from the data area. We now have a value of which we wish to find the square root; this is achieved by lines 580-670. I will explain these in detail later on — for now, note that by line 690, BC contains the square root, and therefore the Y axis offset for the current value of the loop counter.

IX is pointed to the first set of co-ordinates, the last point drawn to in the first quadrant. On the first pass of the loop these will be XX+R,YY, where XX and YY are the origin of the circle and R the radius. The new X,Y co-ordinates are calculated by adding the loop counter to XX and the Y offset (stored in BC) to YY: these are placed in DE and HL respectively.

Drawing the circle

A CALL to PTSEG (PrinT SEGment) has the following effect — the graphics cursor is moved to the last point drawn to in each quadrant, the new position stored and then drawn to.

To perform the graphics functions we use ROM routines. The routine to move the graphics cursor, without plotting the actual positon, is GRA MOVE ABSOLUTE, &BBC0. This requires the X and Y co-ordinates to be sent in DE and HL respectively, and corrupts AF, BC, DE, and HL. This explains the need for all the PUSH and POP operations in PTSEG. The other routine, GRA PLOT ABSOLUTE, &BBEA, draws a line from the current position to the new one supplied in DE and HL (X and Y). The registers affected are the same as for MOVE. I will list some other useful graphics ROM routines later in the chapter.

The rest of the main body of the loop concerns itself with the drawing of the other three segments; finding the negative as well as the positive effects and repeating the process. Assembler lines 830-1100 look, and indeed are, somewhat convoluted in an attempt to keep as many as possible of the values needed close to hand, either in registers or on the stack. BC is used throughout to hold the Y axis offset; this is the value that we went to great pains to calculate. A holds the X axis offset, which is also the loop counter. If you draw connecting lines between each pair of associated PUSH and POPs, it should help you to understand the stack operations. The routine manages to hang on to the Y origin, and only fetches the X origin value once from the data area. Also note the way that the IX pointer is changed for processing each segment so that PTSEG operates on each quadrant in turn; by line 1120, IX is pointing to the same place as at the beginning of the drawing operation.

Line 1110 tests for the end of the routine. If the X offset just plotted, as held in the A register, has reached zero, then we have completed the circle. You may wonder why the decrement operation is at the beginning of the loop but the test at the end. This allows the value of zero to be processed — we cannot quickly test for a value being decremented past zero because DEC A has no effect on the carry flag. This problem could be solved by using SUB 1, but the loop counter (which begins as the radius) needs to be decremented before the first pass of the loop, so putting DEC at the beginning saves an operation. When the final pass of the loop has been completed, we can return to BASIC; the circle has been drawn. There is one thing remaining to do, however; we have pushed nine two-byte values onto the stack, and they must be removed before a RET will fetch the correct address. We could use nine POPs, or even a DJNZ loop to save program space, but the neatest solution is to calculate where the return address is (LD DE,20: ADD IX,DE) and then reload the stack pointer (LD SP,IX).

Estimating square roots

I have left the explanation of the square root calculation until this point because it is easier to view in isolation, and as a method may well be of use to you in other applications. Let's go through the principle. We want to find the square root of a 16-bit number (0-65536, square roots 0-255), and we begin by guessing it to be 128: this is halfway through the possible answers. The square of 128 is 16384, &4000, which we compare with our target value: if the guess is lower than the target we add half of the original guess (128+64), if higher we

subtract (128-64). We now have a guess of either 192 or 64: we square the appropriate one of these, compare the answer with the target and either add or subtract 32. This process continues, with us repeatedly adding or subtracting descending powers of two; each stage will bring our guess nearer to the right answer.

Binary searching

Now consider the values we are using. We begin with 128; the remaining powers we use are 64, 32, 16, 8, 4, 2 and 1: add these together and the result is 255. Try to reach any number in the range 0-255 by addition and subtraction of the powers and you will find you always get within one of your target: seven operations are the maximum required. We only have an accuracy of 1 in 255, but we can find the approximate square root by this method. You could improve the accuracy by dealing in more places, but for our purposes the errors are acceptable.

The principle of using powers of two to search for the square root of a number is very powerful. It is known as *binary searching*; you are likely to encounter it in sophisticated BASIC programs: there is also a sorting technique, the *Shell-Metzner* sort, which uses it. The crucial point to understand is that by addition and subtraction of descending powers of two we can always get within one place of any value, given that our first guess is a high enough power.

SQRLP — machine code to find a square root

Now let's return to our program. Remember that we want to find the square root of a 16-bit number. The method is helped by the ease with which we can divide a number by two in machine code, just by shifting its bits one place to the right. Lines 540-560 quicken the process by setting up the registers for the first guess; we will always start with 128, the power of which is 16384. Having loaded A with the guessed root, DE with its square (&4000) and C with 64 (half of the first guess), we jump into the middle of SQRLP (SQuare Root LooP).

The first comparison sets the carry flag according to whether an addition or subtraction of C is required to bring the guess closer to the answer. Notice that line 650 avoids the need for two jumps by always subtracting C; so if an addition was required then C must previously have been added not once but twice to cancel the subtraction. If you count bytes and machine cyles you will see that this is a little more efficient, if slightly puzzling.

The value in C is used to determine the end of the loop. Once it has been divided by two (SRL C - 128 becomes 64, etc.), it is tested; if it has become

zero then the loop has finished, otherwise we jump back to SQRLP. The square of the new guess is found by a call to SQOFA: the target is transferred from its storage register, IY, into HL, and a comparison performed by subtraction. The new power of two held by C is added or subtracted as necessary, C divided by two, and the check for another pass made.

At the end of the loop, BC is loaded with A, and we have a sufficiently accurate square root for our purposes. It is possible to improve the accuracy of the approximation: we could jump out of the loop if the comparison resulted in zero. However, this would mean that only some roots would be found accurately; the remaining errors would result in a ragged circle. Another possibility would be to use the remainder of the last comparison to estimate whether to round the result up or down. The number of program bytes that this adds does not, in my opinion, justify the slight improvement to the resulting circle.

One final point worth mentioning about *Circle* is that the result may appear slightly oval; how much it does so will depend on your own particular monitor. The reason for this is that screen pixels are a little larger along the Y axis, while the mathematics of the routine assume them to be as wide as they are high. You could add an adjusting factor to the routine, but remember that what appears perfectly circular on your monitor may not look the same on someone else's.

1.5

Graphics firmware routines

The *Circle* routine makes use of the firmware ROM routines. There are a number of other calls that affect the graphics screen, many of which you can utilise. The first time requires the X and Y co-ordinates to be passed in DE and HL respectively. They corrupt AF, BC, DE and HL.

GRA MOVE RELATIVE — &BBC3: a relative version of MOVE ABSOLUTE.

GRA SET ORIGIN — &BBC9: sets a new user origin.

GRA PLOT ABSOLUTE — &BBEA: plots an absolute point.

GRA PLOT RELATIVE -- &BBED: a relative plot.

GRA LINE RELATIVE — &BBF9: a relative version of LINE ABSOLUTE.

The next two routines also corrupt the same registers: GRA CLEAR WINDOW — &BBDB: a CLS of the window display. GRA INITIALISE — &BBBA: resets all the graphics parameters.

The answers from the next two are returned as X and Y in DE and HL. ASK

CURSOR also corrupts AF: GRA ASK CURSOR — &BBC6: gets the cursor position. GRA GET ORIGIN — &BBCC: gets the origin position.

For the next two DE and HL need to contain the X and Y positions or offsets. The result is returned in A; flags, BC, DE and HL are corrupted. GRA TEST ABSOLUTE — &BBF0: gets the colour of a point. GRA TEST RELATIVE — &BBF3: relative version of TEST ABSOLUTE.

Both of these require two user co-ordinates, one for each edge to be passed in DE and HL; they corrupt AF, BC, DE and HL. GRA WIN WIDTH — &BBCF: sets new X axis graphics limits. GRA WIN HEIGHT — &BBD2: sets new Y axis graphics limits.

In these routines, on return, DE contains the co-ordinates of the left or top edge, HL the right or bottom. AF is corrupted. GRA GET W WIDTH — &BBD5: gets the X axis limits. GRA GET W HEIGHT — &BBD8: gets the Y axis limits.

These require A to contain the new colour. Corrupt AF: GRA SET PEN — &BBDE: sets the graphics pen colour. GRA SET PAPER — &BBE4: sets the graphics paper colour.

And, finally, these routines have no special requirements: GRA GET PEN — &BBE1: fetches the current pen colour to A. GRA GET PAPER — &BBE7: fetches the current paper colour to A.

All the above routines are very robust: they work in whatever screen mode is currently selected and don't mind being sent co-ordinates that are outside the current graphics window. Note that relative co-ordinates may need to be negative; the signed number convention is therefore used, so &FFFF is -1, for example.

Using these routines allows you to perform any of the graphics functions possible from BASIC, except from within your own machine code routines. Shapes of any description can be constructed to suit your particular purpose. For example, drawing squares or triangles would be quite simple to program, as long as you sent the right parameters to your routine.

CHAPTER 8 A Fill Routine

Locomotive BASIC on the 464 does not have a command which will colour in a shape on the screen, other than a rectangular window area. Fill is a machine code routine that will do so, and faster, incidentally, than the Fill command on the 664. When you come to study the method used by the routine, you will see that it does have some limitations -- filling irregular shapes will require a careful choice of start point, and on occasions more than one Fill may be required. These limitations are compensated for by the speed at which the routine works. It is possible to write a shorter routine that has the same effect as *Fill*, using ROM routines to examine the screen one pixel at a time — Fill operates on bytes, only resorting to pixel filling when nearing the boundaries of the shape it aims to colour in. To load the routine, enter the code loading routine from Chapter 4 (from tape or disk if possible) and add the program listing 8.1 to it. Save the demo program on tape (we will need it later) and then run it. As long as no data statement errors need correction, the screen will display a diamond shape and you will be asked for a colour in the range 1 to 25. Try 1 to begin with, and you will see the shape quickly filled. Careful examination will reveal that the lower half is filled first, then the upper half.

```
Program 8.1
```

```
**
101 REM **
              Fill Demo
110 MEMORY & A57F: GOSUB 8000
120 MODE 1:WINDOW £1,1,40,1,1
130 WHILE 1
140 CLS:PLOT 469,199,1
150 DRAW 319,349:DRAW 169,199
160 DRAW 319,49:DRAW 469,199
170 INPUT #1,"Fill colour (1-25)";F%
180 IF F%<1 OR F%>25 THEN 160
190 INK 2.F%
200 CALL &A470,319,199,2
210 IF INKEYS="" THEN 210
```

220 WEND
230 END
8000 REM ***********************************
8001 REM ** Code Loading Routine **
8002 REM ***********************************
8010 REM Use lines from Program 4.1
9000 REM ***********************************
9001 REM ** Fill Data **
9002 REM ***********************************
9010 DATA 272
9020 DATA CD,CC,BB,44,4D,DD,6E,04,1076
9030 DATA DD,66,05,19,EB,21,7F,02,750
9040 DATA A7,ED,52,D8,DD,6E,02,DD,1256
9050 DATA 66,03,09,44,4D,21,8F,01,436
9060 DATA A7, ED, 42, D8, D5, 7B, CB, 1A, 1251
9070 DATA 1F,CB,1A,1F,CB,1A,1F,DD,772 9080 DATA 77.02.2F.C6.50.DD.77.01.787
9080 DATA 77,02,2F,C6,50,DD,77,01,787 9090 DATA CD,11,BC,2F,D6,FC,D1,3D,1193
9100 DATA 28,06,CB,2A,CB,1B,18,F7,792
9110 DATA CB,28,CB,19,C5,60,69,CD,1074
9120 DATA 1D,BC,DD,71,05,7E,CB,01,886
9130 DATA 38,03,07,18,F9,CD,2F,BC,779
9140 DATA CD, 2C, BC, 57, DD, 71, 03, CB, 1064
9150 DATA 09, DD, 71, 04, DD, 7E, 00, CD, 899
9160 DATA 2C, BC, 5F, C1, 3E, C7, 91, 41, 991
9170 DATA 4F,04,E5,E5,C5,CD,0C,A5,1120
9180 DATA C1,E1,20,05,CD,26,BC,10,902
9190 DATA F2,E1,41,AF,B8,C8,CD,29,1337
9200 DATA BC,E5,C5,CD,OC,A5,C1,E1,1414
9210 DATA CO,10,F3,C9,DD,4E,05,CD,1161 9220 DATA 6E,A5,C0,CB,09,38,05,CD,945
9220 DATA 6E,A5,C0,CB,09,38,05,CD,945 9230 DATA 5C,A5,30,1B,DD,46,01,AF,799
9240 DATA B8,28,14,E5,CD,20,BC,7E,1024
9250 DATA BA,20,05,73,10,F6,18,06,630
9260 DATA DD,4E,04,CD,5C,A5,E1,DD,1211
9270 DATA 4E,05,CB,01,38,05,CD,65,654
9280 DATA A5,30,17,DD,46,02,AF,B8,888
9290 DATA C8,CD,23,BC,7E,BA,20,04,976
9300 DATA 73,10,F6,C9,DD,4E,03,CD,1085
9310 DATA 65, A5, AF, C9, CD, 6E, A5, C0, 1314
9320 DATA CB,09,30,F8,C9,CD,6E,A5,1189
9330 DATA CO,CB,01,30,F8,C9,7A,AE,1189

9340 DATA A1,C0,7B,A1,47,79,2F,A6,1042 9350 DATA 80,77,AF,C9,00,00,00,00,623

To show the routine's versatility, break in to the program with ESC and change the screen mode by altering line 120: now restart the program with GOTO 120 and you will see that *Fill* also works in mode 0 and mode 2.

Using *Fill*

To use the program from BASIC you need to send three parameters — the X and Y co-ordinates (user co-ordinates, taking the graphics origin into account) and an ink number. The pixel chosen by the co-ordinates dictates the starting point of the filling, and establishes which is the old ink that is to be overwritten by the new. The form of the CALL is shown in line 200 of the demo program: the parameters need to be in the order X, Y and ink. In the next chapter we will see how to implement *Fill*, as well as *Circle*, as extended BASIC commands.

You may like to experiment with the routine by altering the shape drawn by BASIC in the demonstration program, or by changing the start point. You will soon discover the limitations that the routine acquires as the result of its speed. It can be successful for the sides of a shape, even if they are very irregular, but the top and bottom can pose problems. A careful choice of start point will sometimes help, otherwise further fills will be required.

Before we tackle the method of the machine code routine and details of its coding, it will help if we define the different conventions used to describe screen position, and explore the manner in which the video RAM is used to store information.

Screen co-ordinate systems

Print co-ordinates: this is the most important screen co-ordinate system. You are likely to have used these in conjunction with the LOCATE command in order to move the print position. Character co-ordinates begin at 1,1 — the top left of the screen. Position 2,1 is one character space right, the actual distance depending on the screen mode and therefore the size of the characters. The Y character co-ordinate dictates which character line is printed to — LOCATE 1,25 would move the print position to the bottom of the screen. If a window has been defined, the print co-ordinates begin at the top left corner of the window.

Print co-ordinates are not used by the *Fill* routine, but they do apply to the TXT ROM calls in precisely the same way as they are used by BASIC.

Standard graphics co-ordinates: if you have not moved the graphics origin position with the ORIGIN command, standard graphics co-ordinates and user graphics co-ordinates (as used by the BASIC graphics functions) are identical. The co-ordinates 0, 0 (X,Y) indicate the bottom left corner of the screen. The X co-ordinates run horizontally, with the furthest right position having the value 639. The vertical Y co-ordinates have a maximum value of 399, indicating the top of the screen.

Whatever the screen mode currently in operation, there are always 640 X axis positions. Only in mode 2, however, is there a separate pixel for each position. Mode 1 has 320 pixels per line, so PLOT 0,0 and PLOT 1,0 will produce a dot in the same position. In mode 0, a pixel occupies four co-ordinate positions — PLOT 0,0 and PLOT 3,0 therefore plot the same pixel.

The Y axis contains 200 lines, irrespective of the screen mode, so Y positions 0 and 1 both refer to the bottom line of the screen.

User graphics co-ordinates: as stated above, these only differ from standard co-ordinates if the graphics origin has been moved. Wherever the origin is, it has the co-ordinates 0,0. It is possible to use negative values for user co-ordinates, as these may fall on the screen. For example PLOT -1, -1 will place a dot on the screen one pixel to the left and one line lower than the graphics origin.

Relative graphics co-ordinates: the origin for relative co-ordinates is taken as the last position of the graphics cursor. In all other respects they are the same as user co-ordinates.

Base, or physical, co-ordinates: these are only used by the firmware, and in particular the screen pack. They bear a close resemblance to the actual pixel locations on the screen. The origin, 0,0 is always the bottom left corner of the screen: there are 200 positions on the Y axis, so co-ordinates are in the range 0 to 199. The number of positions on the X axis varies with the screen mode: mode 2 has 640 (0 to 639); mode 1 has 320 (0 to 319); and mode 0 only 160 (0 to 159). To convert standard co-ordinates to base co-ordinates we can divide the Y value by two; the X value is valid for mode 2, and must be divided by two or four for modes 1 or 0 respectively.

The screen memory layout

The Amstrad uses 16K of RAM, addresses C000 to FFFF, to store the information which the video display chip translates into a signal to feed to the monitor or modulator in order to produce a display picture. Almost all of the 16K bytes of RAM store data for the screen display. Let us choose a byte that holds the information for the top left corner of the screen and examine how that data is stored. When in mode 2, the byte holds eight pixels, one in each

bit. The most significant bit (MSB), bit 7, stores the furthest left pixel, that is, the pixel in the very corner of the screen. If the bit is set, that screen pixel is displayed as ink 1 (normally bright yellow, although it can be changed to any colour from the palette of 27). If the bit is zero, then it produces an ink 2 pixel (normally blue).

The second-leftmost bit of the byte, bit 6, holds the data for the second pixel in the top line, (standard co-ordintes 1,399). Subsequent bits relate to the adjacent pixels, until we reach bit 0, which holds the data for standard co-ordinate 7,399. Note that each pixel can only be in of two conditions, which explains why in mode 2 only two colours can be displayed.

The actual colours displayed for the inks are determined by information previously sent to the video chip, which has palette registers in which to hold the information. Changing ink colours is completely unconnected with altering the bytes of screen RAM — it can be performed by a firmware screen routine. Mode 1 stores only four pixels in a byte. Bits 7 and 3 hold the data for the leftmost pixel, bits 6 and 2 hold the second pixel, 5 and 1 the third, and 4 and 0 the rightmost. With two bits available for each pixel, four values can be stored, allowing four inks to be represented. Using the leftmost pixel as an example, bits 3 and 7 are used to store the ink number. The low bit is taken as the most significant — in this case bit 3, so if the byte had a binary value of 00001000, then the leftmost pixel would be displayed as ink 2 (10 binary); bit 3 set (MSB of the ink number of the leftmost pixel and therefore 2) and bit 7 clear. If bit 7 were also set (10001000), the resulting ink number would be 3other possibilities are 00000000 (ink 0) and 10000000 (ink 1). In the examples given above, the other pixels all have an ink value of 0, but again in their case, the least significant bit of the byte is always the most significant bit of the ink number. The mode that offers the most inks also has the least number of pixels to a byte (and to a line): mode 0 stores only two pixels per byte. The leftmost pixel's ink number is held in bits 7, 5, 3 and 1; the right-hand pixel of the byte uses bits 6, 4, 2 and 0. As with mode 1, the least significant bit is the most significant in terms of the ink number. If the byte held the information 10000010 binary, the left-hand pixel would be displayed as ink 9.

This may seem a complex arrangement, but the system is designed for the video chip's convenience rather than the programmer's understanding. However, the pixel arrangement lends itself neatly to manipulation by the rotate instructions of the Z80.

The arrangement of the screen memory map

The top 16K of RAM locations hold the pixel information for the screen in an order that is not immediately easy to understand. To increase our problems further, the video display chip can vary the point at which it begins reading

the memory in order to give the effect of a scrolling operation. Before studying the effects of this hardware scroll, let us begin by looking at the memory map in its default state.

The initial video RAM layout

Location C000 is the initial base address of the screen area. The byte of data stored here will give the information for the top left-hand corner of the screen. The bytes C001 to C04F hold the pixel data for the remainder of the top line of the screen. There are always 80 (50 hex) bytes in a screen line, whatever mode is selected — changing screen mode does not alter the order in which the bytes are scanned. From the above discussion of pixel arrangement, you can see that 80 bytes will yield 640, 320 and 160 pixels in modes 2, 1 and 0 respectively.

Bytes following to the first line do not hold the information for the next line down — bytes C050 to C09F hold the data for the ninth screen line, C0A0 to C0EF the data for line 17 and so on. Line 192's data comes from addresses C780 to C7CF; bytes C7D0 to C7FF are unused, providing no data for the screen. The addresses I have just described — C000 to C7FF — form the first 2K block of screen RAM, holding data for the first, ninth and every eighth subsequent line to the bottom of the screen.

The whole of the screen RAM is divided into 2K blocks — while the first block begins with the top line, block 2, addresses C800 to CFD0, begins at the second line. There are eight blocks in all, with the last, F800 to FFFF, beginning at the eighth line and ending with the bottom line of the screen, line 200. These blocks always refer to the same group of lines.

We can look at the arrangement by using a single line of BASIC. Enter the following:

MODE 2: FOR X = &C000 TO &FFFF: POKE X,&FF: NEXT X.

The screen RAM locations are filled with ink 1 pixels in the order of their addresses. Notice the 'venetian blind' effect as the first, then subsequent, 2K blocks of memory are poked.

The mathematical relationship between pixels on the screen is complex, but can lend itself to quick calculations. If we have the address of a byte somewhere in the middle of the screen, the block of pixels to its right will be one address higher, that to its left one address lower.

In most cases, the screen location above will be stored at an address 2K lower, and that below, 2K higher. On the occasions when adding or subtracting 2K would result in an answer outside the 16K block of screen RAM, the new address can be made valid by setting its two MSBs to one (bringing it into the

range C000-FFFF, thereby restoring the base address), and adding or subtracting a further 80 (50 hex) to move the address one line within the block.

Extra precautions are needed at the edges of the screen, but the above method is quite practical in machine code. Unfortunately, although the relationship between screen addresses and pixel locations remains constant, the hardware scroll feature of the video chip is achieved by adding offsets to the starting addresses — this makes calculation cumbersome.

Changing the base and offset of screen RAM

The base address given above need not be set to C000 - it can be pointed to the beginning of any 16K block of memory. On the Amstrad it is possible to use the block 4000 to 7FFF, although not with a BASIC program. The other two areas contain important operating system software and would be extremely difficult to use.

Although invariably we will find the base address set to C000, it is quite possible that an offset will have been defined which causes the first pixels to come from further along each block. The smallest offset allowed is 2, causing the screen to twitch to the left. An offset of 80 (50 hex) will cause the screen to scroll up by eight pixel lines, and so this is a very quick way of scrolling the screen by one line of characters. Changing the offset will bring the unused bytes at the end of each block into play.

A large offset may mean that we reach the end of a 2K block before we have obtained the required number of bytes. In this case we go back to the beginning of the same block rather than going on to the next. This creates a wrap around effect, causing the first and last bytes of a block to occupy adjacent positions on the screen.

If you are working from machine code, and can therefore guarantee that no offsets will be used, screen address calculations are fairly simple. If you wish to interface a routine with BASIC, you must take a potential offset into account. Doing so is perfectly possible; but unless you are trying to achieve very fast graphic movement, there is no point in re-inventing the wheel — you may as well use the available ROM routines.

Masking — how we isolate individual pixels

The manner in which pixels can be tested and altered without affecting the rest of the byte in which they are stored relies on the use of binary logic operations.

Assuming we are in screen mode 2, the third pixel of a byte is stored in bit 5. How could we isolate the third pixel from all the other data in the byte in order to test it? Consider what happens if you AND two binary numbers together

	10101101
AND	00100000
Result =	00100000

If the top number is the screen byte, the effect of the AND operation is to clear all the bits except the one set in the second value — this is called a MASK.

What if the screen byte had been 11011111? Performing an AND between this and the mask 00100000 results in 00000000; so you can see that the mask 00100000 is capable of zeroing all the bits other than bit 5, which retains its original value. If we had used a mask of 00001000, bit 3 would have been isolated, and 10001000 would leave bits 7 and 3 unchanged but clear the rest. It follows that, given the correct mask, we can operate on any pixel by using logic.

The use of masks gives us another bonus: we do not need to keep track of where we are in a byte. Rotating the mask left gives us the mask for the next pixel to the left (RLC 00100000 gives 01000000). In addition, if we try to RLC the bit pattern 10000000, the carry flag will be set, indicating that we have reached the last pixel in the byte.

Masking works just as well in the other screen modes. The mask for pixel 3 in mode 1 is 00100010 — remember there are only four pixels in a byte in this mode — so we need only rotate this twice to the right or once to the left before the carry indicates we have overflowed the end of the byte. A mode 0 mask for pixel 2 would be 01010101, which can only be rotated left once (creating a mask for pixel 1) without causing the carry to be set.

The masking principle is put to good effect by the fill subroutines TSTPX, FLBYR and FLBYL. They work independently of the screen mode and act quickly into the bargain. A study of these routines will give you a good insight into how effects such as smooth pixel movement (rotating a byte and passing the carry over to the next byte) and contrasting cursor printing can be achieved.

The principles behind *Fill*

Let us look at the process that the *Fill* routine follows. The user co-ordinates given are translated into standard and also base co-ordinates, the distances to the sides of the screen calculated, and the address and mask of the first pixel ascertained with the aid of a ROM call. The current ink colour of the chosen pixel is encoded to cover a whole byte, the new ink also encoded into a byte, and masks for the left and right hand pixels created.

The first line is filled by a subroutine (described in a moment). The screen

address is then stepped down a line, and, if this position is still on the screen, the subroutine to fill the line is called again. This process is repeated until either the bottom of the screen is reached or the line filling subroutine returns with the zero flag clear, indicating that the first pixel it tested was not in the old ink. In other words a boundary has been reached.

The original screen address is retrieved. If there are no screen lines above it then we return to BASIC, otherwise the address is pointed one line up the screen, the line filling subroutine called, and this process repeated until the top is reached or a boundary detected.

The routine has now finished. The reason for the top and bottom edges not always being successfully filled is shown up by the above description. Because it is the pixels immediately above and below the starting point that are tested for an old ink value, the routine ceases to fill once a boundary has been detected on that vertical line.

The line fill subroutine — LINFL

The first step is to call a further subroutine — TSTPX. Using the mask and address sent to it, this tests the first pixel to the right; if it finds old ink at the specified pixel, it changes it to new ink and returns with the zero flag set, otherwise the zero flag is cleared.

The line fill routine will study the flag returned to it. If Z is clear, indicating a boundary has been detected, LINFL will return to its calling routine taking the flag with it. If old ink was found, and it has therefore been changed to new ink, the mask is altered so as to isolate the next pixel right and FLBYR called. This fills the current screen byte to its right, with the state of the zero flag indicating a boundary — if one is met, LINFL moves on to filling to the left. Assuming that the first byte is filled to the right without meeting a boundary, the routine now moves on to byte-sized operations, moving the screen address to the right and comparing the byte there with a byte of old ink. If they match, the whole byte is simply replaced with new ink. This loop is continued until either the edge of the screen is reached, or a boundary is detected (i.e. the byte on the screen does not match the old ink byte). In this case, the lefthand mask is fetched and a further call to FLBYR reverts to pixel filling from the left edge of the last byte to the righthand boundary.

The **Fill** listing

The *Fill* routine is shown in source code listing 8.1. Note that the three parameters that are expected from BASIC are as follows: (IX+0), the new ink number; (IX+2) and (IX+3), the Y user co-ordinate; (IX+4) and (IX+5), the X user co-ordinate. The remark statements with the listing

Source code listing 8.1

Sour	ce coue no	mg our			
		100 ;FILL:	Reco	lours an ar	ea of screen up to pixel boundaries.
		110 Requi	res f	irst pixel	(user co-ords) and new ink to be
		120 ;passe	d hy	BASIC	
				F, BC, DE,	н
A470	CDCCBB	140 FILL		BBCC	
A473	44	150			Get user origin into DE and HL.
			LD	B,H	;Transfer Y user origin to BC.
A474	4D	160	LD	C,L	
A475	DD6E04	170	LD	L,(IX+4)	;Get X co-ord into HL.
A478	DD6605	180	LD	H,(IX+5)	
A47B	19	190	ADD	HL,DE	;Add origin.
A47C	EB	200	EX	DE,HL	
A47D	217F02	210	LD	HL,639	;Test if X position is off screen.
A480	A7	220	AND	A	
A481	ED52	230	SBC	HL,DE	
A483	Ď8	240	RET	C	;If it is, return.
A484	DD6E02	250	LD	L,(IX+2)	;Get Y co-ord into HL.
A487	DD6603	260	LD		, Get I CO-OIG INCO III.
A48A	09			H,(IX+3)	. Add antioin
		270	ADD	HL,BC	;Add origin.
A48B	44	280	LD	В,Н	
A48C	4D	290	LD	C,L	
A48D	218F01	300	LD	HL,399	;Test if Y position is off screen.
A490	A7	310	AND	A	
A491	ED42	320	SBC	HL,BC	
A493	D8	330	RET	С	;If it is, return.
A494	D5	340	PUSH	DE	;Save X position on stack.
A495	7B	350	LD	A,E	;Divide X position by 8, putting
A496	CB1A	360	RR	D	;the result into A.
A498	1F	370	RRA		, the robard life in
A499	CB1A	380	RR	D	
A49B	1F	390	RRA	L	
A49C		400	RR	D	
	CB1A			D	
A49E	1F	410	RRA	(11.0)	
A49F	DD7702	420	LD	(IX+2),A	;Save "bytes to left" value.
A4A2	2F	430	CPL	•	Calculate "bytes to right" value.
A4A3	C650	440	ADD	A,#50	
A4A5	DD7701	450	LD	(IX+1),A	;Save it.
A4A8	CD11BC	460	CALL	#BC11	;Get screen mode.
A4AB	2F	470	CPL	;	Transform it for use as counter.
A4AC	D6FC	480	SUB	#FC	
A4AE	D1	490	POP	DE	;Salvage X position.
A4AF	3D	500 BASEL	DEC	А	This loop converts the X position
A4B0	2806	510	JR	Z,GETBY	;to a physical co-ordinate.
A4B2	CB2A	520	SRA	D	, co a phyonoar oo oronnator
A4B4	CB1B	530	RR	Ē	
A4B6	18F7	540	JR	BASEL	
					Con much V position to a shusical
A4B8	CB28	550 GETBY	SRA	В	;Convert Y position to a physical
A4BA	CB19	560	RR	C	;co-ordinate.
A4BC	C5	570	PUSH		;Save Y co-ordinate.
A4BD	60	580	LD	Н,В	
A4BE	69	590	LD	L,C	
A4BF	CD1DBC	600	CALL	#BC1D	;Get screen address and mask.
A4C2	DD7105	610	LD	(IX+5),C	;Save mask.
A4C5	7E	620	LD	A,(HL)	;Fetch byte from screen.
A4C6	CB01	630 ODILP	RLC	C	;This loop moves the desired ink
A4C8	3803	640	JR	C,CONV	; bits to the left of the byte.
A4CA	07.	650	RLCA		,
A4CB	18F9	660	JR	ODILP	Comment into information in
A4CD	CD2FBC	670 CONV	CALL	#BC2F	;Convert ink information to cover

A4D0	CD2CBC	680	CALL # BC2C	;the whole byte.
A4D3	57	690	LD D,A	;Put "old ink" byte into D.
A4D4	DD7103	700	LD (IX+3),C	;Save "far left" mask.
A4D7	CB09	710	RRC C	;Generate "far right" mask.
A4D9	DD7104	720	LD (IX+4),C	;Save it.
A4DC	DD7E00	730	LD A.(IX+0)	;Get "new ink" number.
A4DF	CD2CBC	740	CALL # BC2C	;Convert it to encoded ink byte.
A4E2	5F	750	LD E.A	;Put "new ink" byte into E.
A4E3	C1	760	POP BC	Retrieve Y physical co-ord.
A4E4	3EC7	770	LD A,199	;Put "lines up" value into C
A4E6	91	780	SUB C	;and "lines down" value into B.
A4E0	41	790	LD B,C	,and Times down value into b.
A4E8	41 4F	800	•	
A4E0 A4E9	4r 04	810	LD C,A INC B	
				Sava aaroon addraad
A4EA	E5	820	PUSH HL	;Save screen address.
A4EB	E5	830 DWFIL		
A4EC	C5	840	PUSH BC	
A4ED		850	CALL LINFL	;Fill the current screen line.
A4F0	C1	860	POP BC	
A4F1	El	870	POP HIL	
A4F2	2005	880	JR NZ, UP?	;If no pixels were filled, jump.
A4F4	CD26BC	890	CALL # BC26	;Step screen address down a line.
A4F7	10F2	900	DJNZ DWFIL	Repeat loop if not off screen.
A4F9	El	910 UP?	POP HL	;Salvage initial screen address.
A4FA	41	920 ·	LD B,C	;"Lines up" value into B for use
A4FB	AF	930	XOR A	;as counter: test for zero, and if
A4FC	B8	940	CP B	;it is, return.
A4FD	C8	950	RET Z	
-A4FE	CD29BC	960 UPFIL	CALL # BC29	;Step screen address up a line.
A501	E5	970	PUSH HL	
A502	C5	980	PUSH BC	
A503	CD0CA5	990	CALL LINFL	;Fill current line.
A506	C1	1000	POP BC	
A507	El	1010	POP HL	
A508	C0	1020	RET NZ	;If no pixels were filled, return.
A509	10F3	1030	DJNZ UPFIL	Repeat loop if not off screen.
A50B	C9	1040	RET ;	Return to BASIC.
		1050 ;Subro	outine to fill a	
A50C	DD4E05	1060 LINFL		;Get starting mask into C.
A50F	CD6EA5	1070	CALL TSTPX	Test and possibly fill pixel.
A512	CO	1080	RET NZ	If pixel was not old ink, return.
A513	CB09	1090	RRC C	; If this was the rightmost pixel,
A515	3805	1100	JR C,LINRT	; jump ahead.
A517	CD5CA5	1110	CALL FLBYR	;Fill the pixels to the right, and
A51A	301B	1120		+1 ;if we don't reach the last, jump.
A51C	DD4601	1130 LINRT		;Get "bytes right" value.
A51F	AF	1140	XOR A	; If zero, jump ahead.
A520	B8	1150	CP B	, in Dero, Junp alleast
A521	2814	1160	JR Z,LINLT+1	•
A523	E5	1170	PUSH HL	;Save screen address.
A524	CD20BC	1180 RTLOP		Step screen address a byte right.
A527	7E	1190		;Compare the screen contents with a
A527				;byte of old ink, and if they don't
	BA 2005	1200		
A529		1210	JR NZ, RTEND	match, jump out of the loop.
A52B	73	1220	LD (HL),E	;Place new ink byte on screen.
A52C	10F6	1230	DJNZ RTLOP	;If not off screen, repeat loop.
A52E	1806	1240	JR LINLT	;Off the screen - jump ahead.
A530	DD4E04	1250 RTEND	,	;Get leftmost mask.
A533	CD5CA5	1260	CALL FLBYR	;Fill screen byte.

A536	El	1270 LINLT POP HL ;Restore screen address.
A537	DD4E05	1280 LD C,(IX+5) ;Get original mask.
A53A	CB01	1290 RLC C ;Move mask one pixel left.
A53C	3805	1300 JR C,LTDN? ; If end of byte, jump.
	CD65A5	
A541	3017	1320 JR NC, DONE ; If not all filled, jump.
A543	DD4602	1330 LTDN? LD B,(IX+2) ;Get "bytes left" as counter.
	AF	1340 XOR A ; If it is zero, return.
A547	B8	1350 CP B
A548	C8	1360 RET Z
A549	CD23BC	1370 LTLOP CALL #BC23 ;Step screen address left.
A54C	7E	1380 LD A,(IIL) ;Compare screen byte with old
A54D	BA	1390 CP D ;ink byte, and if they don't
A54E	2004	1400 JR NZ,ENDLT ;match, jump out of loop.
A550	73	
A551	10F6	, and the second second
A553	C9	
		1430 RET ; Off screen - return.
A554	DD4E03	1440 ENDLT LD C,(IX+3) ;Get rightmost mask.
A557	CD65A5	1450 CALL FLBYL ;Fill byte leftwards.
A55A	AF	1460 DONE XOR A ;Clear zero flag.
A55B	C9	1470 RET ; Return to calling routine.
		1480 ;Subroutine to fill a byte from mask to right.
A55C	CD6EA5	1490 FLBYR CALL TSTPX ;Test and possibly set pixel.
A55F	C0	1500 RET NZ ; If it was not old ink, return.
A560	CB09	1510 RRC C ;Rotate mask right.
A562	30F8	1520 JR NC,FLBYR ;Repeat loop if not last pixel.
A564	C9	1530 RET
	0,	1540 ;Subroutine to fill a byte from mask to left.
A565	CD6EA5	
A568	CDOLAD	1550 FLBYL CALL TSTPX ;A leftward version of FLBYR. 1560 RET NZ
A569	CB01	1570 RLC C
A56B	30F8	1580 JR NC,FLBYL
A56D	C9	1590 RET
		1600 ;Test pixel at (HL), mask c. If it is old ink, change
	_	1610 ;it to new ink. Zero flag cleared if no match.
A56E	7A	1620 TSTPX LD A,D ;Compare pixel with old ink.
A56F	AE	1630 XOR (HL)
A570	Al	1640 AND C
A571	CO	1650 RET NZ ;Return if no match.
A572	7B	1660 LD A,E ;Mask off current pixel of new ink.
A573	Al	1670 AND C
A574	47	1680 LD B,A ;Save in B.
A575	79	
A576	2F	
		1700 CPL
A577	AG	1710 AND (HL)
A578	80	1720 ADD A,B ;Add new ink pixel.
A579	77	1730 LD (HL),A ;Put new byte on screen.
A57A	AF	1740 XOR A ;Clear zero flag.
A57B	C9	1750 RET ; Return to calling routine.

should help you relate the above description of the principle to the component parts of the code. The following sections are of particular interest: *Lines 210-240, 300-330:* having calculated the standard co-ordinates, these lines check that the specified point is actually on the screen. If it is not, the routine returns to BASIC having done nothing.

Lines 340-410 divide the X co-ordinate by eight using binary shifting. This

tells the routine how many bytes there are to the left edge of the screen.

Lines 430-440 are a quick way of subtracting the number of bytes to the left from 4F hex, in order to calculate how many bytes there are to the right edge. Lines 460-540 fetch the screen mode and use it to calculate the X base co-ordinate, while lines 550-560 divide the Y co-ordinate by 2 so it too becomes a base co-ordinate.

Line 600 calls a very useful ROM routine which converts the base co-ordinates to a screen address and mask. The ROM routines used by *Fill*, along with others of interest, will be detailed at the end of this chapter.

Lines 770-810 calculate loop counters from the Y co-ordinate so that reaching the bottom and the top of the screen can be detected.

The main section of *Fill* is contained in lines 820-1040, consisting of two loops, one for the downward and the other for the upward fill.

LINFL, the line filling subroutine described above is contained in lines 1060-1470. Note that the counters used for checking for the edges of the screen are fetched from indexed memory locations, and care is taken to prevent a count of zero, which would cause the loops to be performed 255 times. D and E are used throughout LINFL and its subroutines to hold the old and new ink bytes.

FLBYR and FLBYL (lines 1490-1590) demonstrate the neatness of using circular rotate instructions to alter a mask. There are two possible exits from these routines: where the last pixel in the byte has been treated, or a pixel that is not in old ink is encountered. The state of the flags differs for each exit so that the calling routine can determine what has happened.

The last subroutine, TSTPX (lines 1620-1750), uses both the mask and a complement of it in order to deal with only the desired pixel. Note the neat use of XOR in line 1630 to check for a difference in the bit patterns — the other XOR in line 1740 is simply used to clear the zero flag which indicates that the specified pixel did consist of old ink.

Screen pack firmware routines

Now that the screen layout has been discussed, we can extend the list of screen routines begun in Chapter 3.

BC05 SET OFFSET: alters the offset used by the video chip for the start of each block of memory. HL is sent holding the required offset, and is masked with 7FE to make it legal.

BC08 SET BASE: changes the block of memory used as video RAM. A must pass the high byte of the new block's address, and it is masked with C0 to ensure the RAM begins at a 16K boundary. Both the above routines corrupt AF and HL.

BC0B GET LOCATION: returns the high byte of the base address in A and

the offset in HL.

BC0E SET MODE: changes the screen mode to that sent it in the A register. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.

BC11 GET MODE: returns the current mode number in A.

BC14 CLEAR: sets the whole of the screen to ink 0. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.

BC1D DOT POSITION: When sent the X and Y base co-ordinates in DE and HL respectively, returns the screen address in HL and mask for that pixel in C. B also returns one less than the number of pixels in a byte. Corrupts AF, DE.

BC20 NEXT BYTE: moves a screen address one byte right.

BC23 PREV BYTE: moves a screen address one byte left.

BC26 NEXT LINE: moves a screen address one line down.

BC29 PREV LINE: moves a screen address one line up.

All the above receive and send the address in HL. They do not indicate if you have moved off the screen, which would mean that the returned address would be meaningless. They all corrupt AF.

BC2C INK ENCODE: converts the ink number in A to a whole byte of that ink's bit pattern.

BC2F INK DECODE: takes the leftmost pixel from the byte passed in A and converts it to an ink number.

BC32 SET INK: changes the colour or flashing colours in which an ink is displayed. A should contain the ink number, B the first and C the second colour. Sending B and C at the same value creates a steady colour. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.

BC35 GET INK: if you send an ink number in A, this routine will return the colours of the ink currently being displayed by the video chip via B and C. Corrupts AF, DE, HL.

BC38 SET BORDER: sets the border colour to the values sent in B and C. Corrupts AF, BC, DE, HL.

BC3B GET BORDER: returns the border colour in B and C. Corrupts AF, DE, HL.

BC3E SET FLASHING: sets the time, in TV fields (50th or 60th of a second, depending on country), for which each colour of a flashing pair is displayed. The values are sent in H and L, affecting the first and second colours respectively. Zero is taken to mean 256. Corrupts AF, HL.

The above routines, plus those listed in Chapter 3, give you control over the screen without requiring you to dabble directly with the hardware.

CHAPTER 9 Extending BASIC

The Amstrad CPC computers are equipped with a form of BASIC that is fast and has many excellent features. Although it may be criticised for lacking some commands, it does have one facility that allows virtually any command to be included in its BASIC, and then for it to be used with almost the same ease as if it were an original part of the language. We will employ this feature, called resident system extensions (RSX), so as to implement the *Circle* and *Fill* routines as BASIC commands. We will also create a further keyword, CIRCFL, which will produce a filled circle as long as its centre is within the screen area.

Once an RSX has been loaded an dinitialised, the use of the extra commands is indicated by bar symbol. (|, on the @ key) as a prefix. For example, our circle command will be invoked by using the command |CIRCLE,X,Y,R whether directly from the keyboard or as part of a program. The parameters are the same as for the direct machine code CALL (the co-ordinates of the centre and the radius). The fill command will take the form |FILL,X,Y,I (I being the ink colour), while the combined command will have the syntax |CIRCFL,X,Y,R,I. Note that a comma is required after the name and before the first parameter. As with other BASIC words, the name need not be typed in upper case letters.

It may seem that we are about to go to a great deal of troube to replace CALL with another word, but RSXs are very simple to install; and CALL is a dangerous command — the wrong address or an incorrect number of parameters can cause a crash, possibly destroying an unsaved program into the bargain.

Having set up the new commands properly, mistyping the name will simply generate an UNKNOWN COMMAND error message. Giving the wrong number of parmeters will cause our own error routine to be invoked. The example shown here is only the tip of the iceberg; whole toolkits of extra commands could be written and incorporated into BASIC.

Setting up the RSX

Program 9.1 gives the necessary data statements for adding our graphics routines to BASIC: it also includes a demonstration of the new CIRCFL command. Enter the listing, not forgetting to include the code loading routine from Chapter 4, and then add a temporary line — 115 STOP. Run the routine to check that the data statements are correct. Once they are, remove the temporary line and save the program.

```
Program 9.1
90 REM NOTE - Circle Demo and Fill Demo
91 REM
            MUST be loaded and run
92 RFM
            before this program!
101 REM **
                                  4-4-
                  RSX Demo
110 MEMORY & A467: GOSUB 8000
120 CALL & A3F4
130 CLS
140 FOR M=2 TO 0 STEP -1
145 MODE M:Y=0
150 FOR X=225 TO 30 STEP -15
160 Y=Y+1:PLOT -4,-4,Y
170 [CIRCFL, 300, 200, X, Y
180 NEXT X
190 NEXT M
200 INPUT "Do you wish to save code (Y/N)";A$
210 IF A$="Y" OR A$="y" THEN SAVE "RSX.BIN", B,&A3F0,&280
220 END
9000 RFM ************************
9001 REM **
                 RSX Data
                                 **
9010 DATA 120
9020 DATA 00,00,00,00,21,F0,A3,01,437
9030 DATA FE,A3,CD,D1,BC,C9,09,A4,1393
9040 DATA C3, 1A, A4, C3, 20, A4, C3, 27, 1010
9050 DATA A4,46,49,4C,CC,43,49,52,809
9060 DATA 43,4C,C5,43,49,52,43,46,699
9070 DATA CC,00,FE,03,20,20,18,50,629
9080 DATA FE.03.20.1A.C3.80.A5.FE.1057
9090 DATA 04,20,13,DD,23,DD,23,DD,788
9100 DATA E5.CD.80.A5.DD.E1.DD.6E.1504
```

9110 DATA FE,DD,75,00,18,32,21,54,783 9120 DATA A4,7E,23,CD,5A,BB,FE,07,1068 9130 DATA 20,F7,06,0A,2B,7C,B5,20,675 9140 DATA FB,10,F9,C9,1E,50,61,72,1038 9150 DATA 61,6D,65,74,65,72,20,65,771 9160 DATA 72,72,6F,72,07,00,00,00,460

We must now include the code from the two previous demo programs. This is done by loading the programs and allowing the code loading subroutine to do its work. Load Program 7.1 (Circle Demo) and run it. When you are asked for an origin, ESCape from the program. Then load and run Program 8.1 (Fill* Demo), breaking it when asked for a colour.

Now we can reload the RSX DEMO program, and this time we can run it properly. The CIRCFL demo will draw and fill a number of concentric circles in each of the screen modes, ending with a colourful display in mode 0. When the demonstration ends you will be asked if you wish to save the code — I suggest you do this a number of times, and also check your recording so that an error will not cause you to have to repeat the whole procedure. The code saved is all that is needed to implement the commands on subsequent occasions.

Experiment with the new BASIC commands; see what happens when you try CIRCFL with co-ordinates outside the screen area. You could also try deliberately giving the wrong number of parameters to the commands — the error message does not completely halt a BASIC program, but you should not fail to notice it!

The easiest way to incorporate an RSX into an empty computer is to create a bootstrap loading program. *Program* 9.2 is an example. If you wish to add the extra commands for use in a larger program, alter the last line (140) to RUN "!TITLE" (where TITLE is the name under which the larger program is to be saved); save the bootstrap program first, then the code (SAVE "RSX",B,&A470,&280), and finally the main program. When you issue the comand RUN "BOOT", the three sections should load consecutively.

RSX tables

The firmware needs a number of conditions to be satisfied before an RSX will work. Firstly, there must be both a command table and a name table stored in memory. The first two locations of the command table must hold the address (LSB first) of the first byte of the name table. There must then follow a three-byte JP command that will cause a jump to the handling routine for each of the new commands.

The name table must contain the names of the commands in the same order in which the JP instructions are stored in the command table. The names are stored as bytes of ASCII codes, with the last character of a name indicated by setting bit 7 high — the last L of FILL would be stored as CC rather than 4C hex. For BASIC to be able to recognise the names they must be in upper case and contain no unusual characters. The end of the name table is indicated by a NUL code, 00 hex or NOP.

The kernel routines require four bytes of RAM for their own purposes, located somewhere between addresses 4000 to BFFF (i.e. not shadowed by ROM). This area can be set up in a small workspace at some convenient location, provided we know the address and there is no danger of the RAM being overwritten. Immediately above a lowered HIMEM is ideal.

The final requirement is for us to "log on" the new RSX. A kernel routine, LOG EXT (BCD1), does this for us. It requires BC to hold the address of the command table, and HL the address of the workspace. The routine corrupts DE. On return, whenever BASIC makes use of another kernel routine, FIND COMMAND (BCD4), it will find our new commands. In the case of a RAM-based RSX, sending a pointer to the desired name in HL will return carry false if no command of that name was found, otherwise HL will contain the address of the relevant JP instruction.

The RSX routine

A study of *source code listing 9.1* will show that our routine fulfills all the above requirements. The tables are detailed in line 170-270, the workspace is at line 1120, while the routine that sets up the registers and calls LOG EXT is located at lines 130-160. This is the only part of the routine that is actually run when we initialise the RSX; the rest serves to implement the commands.

Source code listing 9.1

			sets up Circle rameters. Corru	, Fill and Circfl as BASIC commands. Dts BC, HL.
A3F0	00000000	120 WKSP	DEFB 0,0,0,0	;4 bytes for kernel use.
A3F4	21F0A3	130 RSX	LD HL, WKSP	Point HL to workspace.
A3F7	01FEA3	140	LD BC, COM T	Point BC to command table.
A3FA	CDD1BC	150	CALL £BCD1	;Call KL LOG EXT.

A3FD	C9	160	RET	;	End of logging on routine.
A3FE	09A4	170 COM T	DEFW	NAME T	;Address of keyword table.
A400	C31AA4	180 -	JP	FLL -	Jumps to command handlers.
A403	C320A4	190-	JP	CRC	,
A406	C327A4	200	JP	FCIR	
A409	46494C	210 NAME T			Extended BASIC command names.
A409	CC	220		''L''+#80	,Extended babic contain names.
A400	43495243	230		"CIRC"	
A40D	4005	240	DEFB	''L'',''E''+#80)
A411	43495243	250		"CIRC"	
A413 A417	46CC	260		''F'',''L''+#80	
A417 A419		270)
	00		DEFB		The mana symbol of parameters
A41A	FE03	280 FLL	CP	3	; If wrong number of parameters
A41C	2020	290	JR	NZ,ERROR	; jump to FRROR.
A41E	1850	300	JR	#A470	;Jump to FILL routine.
A420	FE03	310 CRC	CP	3	;Parameter check.
A422	201A	320	JR	NZ, ERROR	
A424	C380A5	330	JP	# A580	;Jump to CIRCLE routine.
A427	FE04	340 FCIR	CP	4	;Parameter check.
A429	2013	350	JR	NZ,ERROR	
A42B	DD23	360	INC	IX	;Point IX to "radius" parameter.
A42D	DD23	370	INC	IX	
A42F	DDE5	380	PUSH		;Save pointer to parameters.
A431	CD80A5	390		# A580	;Call CIRCLE routine.
A434	DDE1	400	POP	IX	Réstore parameter pointer.
A436	DD6EFE	410	LD	L,(IX-2)	;parameter area.
A439	DD7500	420	LD	(IX+0),L	
A43C	1832	430	JR	#A470	;Jump to FILL routine.
A43E	2154A4	440 ERROR	LD	HL,MSG	;Point HL to error message.
A441	7E	450 MSLP	LD	A,(HL)	;Get ASCII code from message.
A442	23	460	INC	HL	;Point to next character.
A443	CD5ABB	470	CALL	# BB5A	;Output the character.
A446	FE07	480	CP	7	;If the character was not BELL
A448	20F7	490	JR	NZ,MSLP	; jump back for next character.
A44A	060A	500	LD	B,10	Prepare for delay loop.
A44C	2B	510 DYLP	DEC	HL	Inner delay loop decrements
A44D	7C	520	LD .	A,H	HL until it is zero.
A44E	B5	530	OR	L	,
A44F	20FB	540	JR	NZ, DYLP	
A451	10F9	550		DYLP	;Outer loop repeats 10 times.
A453	C9	560	RET	Return to	
A454	1E	570 MSG	DEFB		;"Home cursor" code.
A455	50617261	580		''Para''	Error message string.
A459	6D657465	590		"mete"	,
A45D	72206572	600		"r er"	
A461	726F72	610		"ror"	
A464	07	620	DEFB		;BELL code.
7404	07	020	DLL D	,	Junio Codes

When BASIC calls an RSX, it sends, in the A register, the number of parameters it has placed in the IX memory area, and therefore the number of parameters declared to BASIC. The three handling routines begin by checking A: if there are not the correct number of parameters, a jump to the ERROR routine is made; otherwise the CRC and FLL handlers make straightforward jumps to the relevant *Circle* or *Fill* routines.

FCIR adjusts the IX pointer and saves it before calling *Circle*; it then restores IX and loads the ink parameter into the correct location for the *Fill* routine

before jumping to it. Fortunately, *Circle* does not use the IX area for data storage, so the X and Y co-ordinates are left intact for use by *Fill*.

Error handling

The ERROR section demonstrates two classic machine code techniques: a string printing routine and a delay loop. When ERROR is jumped to, the bytes stored at location MSG are sent to the OUTPUT text routine — the first code sets the cursor to the top left of the window, the last causes a short beep to be generated. Note the use of HL as a pointer to the message.

The test for the end of the string uses, in this case, the BELL code (ASCII 7) — however, a number of more general string terminators could be used. If you are unlikely to need the characters 128-255, then you can mark the end of a string by setting bit 7 of the last code; witness the RSX name table. Bit 7 would need to be masked in order to print the last character properly — AND 7F would do the trick. Other possibilities for terminating the string are the NUL code (00 — easily tested for with AND A) or CR (ASCII 13).

The delay consist of an outer loop which repeats 10 hex times: if the length of the delay is not convenient, alter the LD B,10 instruction. The inner loop repeatedly decrements HL until it reaches zero: take note of the OR instruction which is used to test for zero, as decrementing a register pair does not alter the flags. Notice that HL is not set to any starting value, although, after the first pass of the inner loop, it is set to zero so that all further passes will take the longest time possible.

General purpose subroutines

The RSX routine is a good example of how machine code can be exploited to produce programs, as distinct from the routines that we have been writing in this book. It does not perform any major tasks in its own right, but calls other routines to do the work. Some decision-making is involved, and a little parameter manipulation, but any hard work is left to subroutines which can be developed and debugged in isolation from the main program.

The use of subroutines is an important part of machine code writing. Any large program which requires message printing and delay loops would do well to include refined versions of those parts of the error routine. In a moment we will transform them into more general purpose routines which can be included in any major program. But first we must consider what requirements are desirable for general purpose subroutines.

Predictability

Most importantly, they should always do precisely what is expected of them. If they cannot perform the task desired, then they should return some value to the calling program which indicates that they have not succeeded. The TSTPX subroutine in the FILL command is a good example of this — flags are used to indicate whether the pixel tested was found not to be old ink and therefore it was not coloured in with new ink.

As part of this same requirement, the routine should return predictable register values. Apart from returning the resultant values of calculations (witness the screen address ROM routines such as NEXT BYTE), it sometimes may be advantageous to return other information which may, or may not, be used by the calling program — we will use this technique in the message printing subroutine.

If you do not require a register to return a useful value, then it is best to ensure that the original contents are restored. This is normally simple to achieve by using PUSH and POP instructions at the beginning and end of subroutines. The main disadvantage of this technique is that it stops you from using the conditional return instructions — you will need to restore the stack before you can return from the subroutine.

If you do decide to allow a subroutine to corrupt a register (and there are many good reasons for doing so), make sure that you remember which registers are corrupted. Careful documentation will pay dividends here once you have written a subroutine you will find yourself calling it without much thought to its effects other than the desired one. I vividly remember how I learnt this lesson: having modified a program written some weeks before, I spent a whole day debugging it because sloppy documentation prevented me from appreciating that a particular register had been corrupted.

Flexibility

When you first decide the need for a subroutine, you will probably have a clear view of what is required from it. If you then go on to write a subroutine that meets your specification, it will serve the immediate purpose but there is every possibility that its role could be extended in order also to fulfill other requirements. It is very shortsighted to write a delay routine which produces a fixed delay of five seconds when, with a little extra code, the enhanced version could produce delays varying from milliseconds to minutes.

When written, an examination of the code may reveal that a few more instructions could add extra features. Although these may not have any immediate function, they could be found advantageous at a later stage in the programming.

Building up a library of useful subroutines will save you much time when

tackling large machine code programs. Some of them you may write yourself: others can be gleaned from books and magazine articles. A careful study of your machine's ROM can provide some beneficial material. Another potential source is other programmer's work if, for example, you belong to a computer club, but without proper documentation you will probably find it quicker to start from scratch anyway. Once a useful library has been collected, parts of it can be loaded before you even begin programming, giving you the essence of your own operating system.

Delay

Source code listing 9.2 shows a simple, but effective delay subroutine. The two input parameters, B (about 0.5 second units) and HL (fine adjustment), give a range from a few milliseconds to over two minutes. The fineness of adjustment available means that you can accurately control the running speed of other routines, where, for example, I/O operations are involved. If the longest available delay is insufficient for you, then a Long Delay subroutine could be implemented using multiple calls to Delay.

Source code listing 9.2

	100 DET AV	- General purpose delay subroutine.
		B as the coarse value, HL as the fine value.
		s of B=0, HL=FFFF will give a delay of
	130 ;appro	ximately half a second.
	140 ;Prese	rves all registers
F5	150 DELAY	PUSH AF
C5	160	PUSH BC
E5	170	PUSH HL
04	180	INC B
23	190	INC HL
2B	200 DELLP	DEC HL
7C	210	LD A,H
B5	220	OR L
20FB	230	JR NZ, DELLP
10F9	240	DJNZ DELLP
E1	250	POP IIL
C1	260	POP BC
F1	270	POP AF
C9	280	RET

There are only two refinements added to *Delay* which distinguish it from the **DYLP** section of RSX. All the registers used are preserved on the stack, so *Delay* can be called with impunity. The values sent are incremented before use so that values of 0,0, rather than causing the longest delay, sensibly cause the shortest.

Although I have suggested a long version of *Delay*, a subroutine that I call *Wait* would be a more useful addition to your library. I will not give a listing of this, just a specification — I hope you will take up the challenge and write it yourself. You should make *Wait* capable of generating a delay of up to four minutes, but if a key is pressed during this time it should return: however this should not happen if a key is already pressed when the routine is first called. An indication should be given as to whether the delay was interrupted by a key-press or ran its full length. The most obvious use for *Wait* is the presentation of instruction pages on the screen, accompanied by the message, "Press any key to continue". The specification given makes *Wait* suitable for many applications.

Strings

Source code listing 9.3 contains the essence of the MSLP of RSX in lines 290-400, but it has been expanded to include two *Strings* routines, INSTR and TBSTR: they differ in the manner in which the message string is passed. INSTR expects the message string to be imbedded in program memory immediately after the call; on return, the PC is suitably modified so that execution continues at the instruction after the message. TBSTR expects HL to be pointing to the desired message, allowing us to fetch the string from a table — a string used on more than one occasion need only be included in memory once, and we can also look up the address of a string from another table in order to vary a program's response to different situations.

Source code listing 9.3

		110 ;includi 120 ;the end	ing control code l of a string. (s to print ASCII strings es. Code 0 is used to mark Code 27 will take the per of times which to
				ring of characters.
				pointing to the byte
				string, and preserve
			her registers.	scilling, and preserve
				ing is imbedded in
				ately following the call.
				bint to the first
			er to be printe	
7200	F1	220 INSTR P		;Get previous value of PC.
	CD0672		CALL TESTR	Print string.
7204			USH HL	Restore return address.
7205		250 R		Return to after string.
7206		260 TBSTR P		;Save registers.
7207			PUSH BC	, save registers.
7208			PUSH DE	
7209			D A,(HL)	Get character code.
720A			INC HL	;Point to next character.
	A7		ND A	Check for NUL.
1200	Ω /	210 N		, GRECK TOL NUL.

720C	2004	320	JR	N7 DEDT2	If not NUT is about
720C	D1	330	POP	NZ,REPT? DE	;If not NUL, jump ahead. ;Restore original register values.
720E	C1	340	POP	BC	, Rescore original register values.
7210	F1	350	POP	AF	
7211	C9	360	RET	M	
7212	FE1B	370 REPT?	CP	27	;If the character is "repeat",
7214	2805	380	JR	Z GETCT	; jump ahead.
7216	CD5ABB	390		#BB5A	;Send the character to be printed.
7219	18EE	400	JR	SRLP	; jump back for another character.
721B	46	410 GETCT	LD	B.(HL)	;Fetch the repeat value.
721C	23	420	INC	HL.	Point to next character.
721D	E5	430 RPLP	PUSH		;save address of repeat string.
721E	CD0672	440		TBSTR	Recursive call.
7221	EB	450	EX	DE,HL	Put end of string into DE.
7222	El	460	POP	HL	Restore HL to start of string.
7223	10F8	470	DJNZ	RPLP	;If more repeats, jump back.
7225	EB	480	EX	DE,HL	;Point HL to next character.
7226	18E1	490	JR	SRLP	;Jump back for next character.
		500 ;Demon	strat	ion of INST	R.
7228	CD0072	510		INSTR	
722B	1B1A	520		27,26	;Repeat 26 times.
722D	54686520	530 MSG		The ''	Message string as ASCII.
7231	636F6465	540		''code''	
7235	20323720	550		" 27 "	
7239	616C6C6F	560		"allo"	
723D	77732079	570		'ws y''	
7241	6F752074	580		''ou t''	
7245	6F207265	590		''o re''	
7249	70656174	600	DEFM	"peat"	
724D	20737472	610		"str"	
7251	696E6773	620		"ings"	
7255	0000	630	DEFB	0,0	;End repeat and end string.
7257	C9	640	RET		

All registers except HL are preserved. On return from either routine, HL will be pointing to the byte after the string just printed. In the case of INSTR this will be the location of the next instruction, and therefore not of use, but after TBSTR it may well be pointing to the next string in the table.

INSTR uses a simple trick to find the address of the string — it POPs the return address from the stack into HL. After calling TBSTR it then PUSHes the new value of HL onto the stack to be used as the return address.

TBSTR has a bonus feature that I decided to include after a study of the character code table in the Amstrad user manual (Chapter 9). There are two codes available if we wish to use all the possible control codes — NUL which does nothing, and ESC, which the manual defines as 'no effect': but the firmware specification goes on to say that it is available to the user. NUL is the best choice as a string terminator — it is easy to test for. How could we exploit ESC?

I decided to use ESC as a 'repeat the following string' code. When encountered, TBSTR jumps to line 410, GETCT (get count), and fetches the next value from the string. It then employs this as a counter to print the next group of characters up to a NUL, as many times as the counter dictates. This is achieved by a recursive call — TSBSTR actually calls itself! Note how DE is used to store the address after the NUL code, so that when the repeat ceases, we can continue with the rest of the string.

Recursion can be a very powerful tool. It is not normally possible in BASIC because the interpreter will muddle up the variables, using the same ones each time the routine is called. As long as care is taken, machine code can employ recursion to very good effect.

Note that lines 500 onwards are provided for the demonstration of INSTR and the repeat facility. Program 9.3 is a BASIC demo program that will load the subroutines at a low point in memory; you must include the code loading routine from Chapter 4. Having entered, saved and run the program, it should print a message out a number of times. You can add further data statements to the program (suitably modifying line 9010). This causes the program to stop with a data error and you can then enter PRINT SUM to get the correct checksum for the end of each data statement. Using this method you will be able to explore the effects of the control codes and the repeat facility. With a little care you should be able to produce some quite stunning screen displays with just a handful of bytes. The control codes will allow almost anything — you can even draw complex pictures by redefining the character shapes with code 25.

Program 9.3

** 101 REM ** INSTR Demo 110 MEMORY & 7257: GOSUB 8000 120 CLS 130 CALL &7228 140 STOP ** 9001 REM ** INSTR Data 9010 DATA 88 9020 DATA E1, CD, 06, 72, E5, C9, F5, C5, 1422 9030 DATA D5,7E,23,A7,20,04,D1,C1,979 9040 DATA F1, C9, FE, 1B, 28, 05, CD, 5A, 1063 9050 DATA BB, 18, EE, 46, 23, E5, CD, 06, 994 9060 DATA 72, EB, E1, 10, F8, EB, 18, E1, 1322 9070 DATA CD,00,72,1B,1A,54,68,65,661 9080 DATA 20,63,6F,64,65,20,32,37,580

9090 DATA 20,61,6C,6C,6F,77,73,20,722 9100 DATA 79,6F,75,20,74,6F,20,72,754 9110 DATA 65,70,65,61,74,20,73,74,790 9120 DATA 72,69,6E,67,73,00,00,C9,748

If, having reached the end of this book, you are now itching to write your own machine code, you may be looking for an effective but reasonably straightforward project on which to cut your teeth. Using TBSTR, how many Teletext style screens do you think you could fit into your Amstrad? The screens could be used for many purposes — for example, skipping through like a 'shop window' type of advertising program.

A further refinement would be a program which allowed you to edit and display the results of character code strings, define the order in which they are displayed, and allow different responses from the keyboard to dictate which screen is displayed next. The resulting program could well be used by non-programmers to produced programmed learning educational aids, or information display systems.

Many computer books use literary quotations to punctuate their chapters. If, like us, you find this practice rather peculiar, perhaps you will nevertheless allow us just one with which to end our book; it is too apt for us to resist the temptation.

These necromantic books are heavenly, Lines, circles, scenes, letters and characters: Ay, these are those that Faustus most desires. Oh, what a world of profit and delight, Of power, of honour, of omnipotence, Is promised to the studious artizan!

> Christopher Marlowe Doctor Faustus 1.1.

APPENDIX 1 **Z80 Instruction Set**

The mnemonics can be understood by reference to Chapter 1. The codes are given in hexadecimal, followed by the number of machine cycles the instruction requires for execution — in the case of two figures being given, the instruction is conditional and the first figure applies to the condition being met.

ADC A,A	8F	4	ADD A,L	85	7
ADC A,B	88	4	ADD A,data	C6 dd	7
ADC A,C	89	4	ADD A, (HL)	86	7
ADC A,D	8A	4	ADD A,(IX+x)	DD 86 xx	19
ADC A,E	8B	4	ADD A,(IY+x)	FD 86 xx	19
ADC A,H	8C	4	ADD HL,BC	09	11
ADC A,L	8D	4	ADD HL,DE	19	11
ADC A,data	CE dd	7	ADD HL,HL	29	11
ADC A,(HL)	8E	7	ADD HL,SP	39	11
ADC A, $(IX+x)$	DD 8E xx	19	ADD IX,BC	DD 09	15
ADC A,(IY+x)	FD 8E xx	19	ADD IX,DE	DD 19	15
ADC 11L, BC	ED 4A	15	ADD IX,IX	DD 29	15
ADC HL,DE	ED 5A	15	ADD IX,SP	DD 39	15
ADC HL,HL	ED 6A	15	ADD IY,BC	FD 09	15
ADC HL,SP	ED 7A	15	ADD IY,DE	FD 19	15
ADD A,A	87	4	ADD IY,IY	FD 29	15
ADD A,B	80	4	ADD IY,SP	FD 39	15
ADD A,C	81	4	AND A	Α7	4
ADD A,D	82	4	AND B	A0	4
ADD A,E	83	. 4	AND _. C	A1	4
ADD A,H	84	7	AND D	A2	4

AND E	A3	4	CALL Z,addr	CC al ah	17/10
AND H	A4	4	CCF	3F	4
AND L	A5	4	CP A	BF	4
AND data	E6 dd	7	CP B	B8	4
AND (HL)	A6	7	CP C	B9	4
AND (IX+x)	DD A6 xx	19	CP D	BA	4
AND (IY+x)	FD A6 xx	19	CP E	BB	4
BIT O,A	CB 47	8	СР Н	BC	4
BIT O,B	CB 40	8	CP L	BD	4
BIT O,C	CB 41	8	CP data	FE dd	7
BIT 0,D	CB 42	8	CP (HL)	BE	7
BIT 0,E	CB 43	8	CP (IX+x)	DD BE xx	19
BIT 0,H	CB 44	8	CP (IY+x)	FD BE xx	19
BIT O,L	CB 45	8	CPD	ED A9	16
BIT O,(HL)	CB 46	12	CPDR	ED B9	21/16
BIT 0,(IX+x)	DD CB xx 46	20	CPI	ED A1	16
BIT 0,(IY+x)	FD CB xx 46	20	CPIR	ED Bl	21/16
			CPL	2F	4
	umbers, add th e 2nd byte of th		DAA	27	4
instruction (4th	•		DEC A	3D	4
codes):			DEC B	05	4
BIT 1 +8	BIT 5 +28		DEC C	OD	4
BIT 2 +10	BIT 6 +30		DEC D	15	4
BIT 3 +18	BIT 7 +38		DEC E	1D	4
BIT 4 +20			DEC H	25	4
CALL addr	CD al ah	17	DEC L	2D	4
CALL C, addr	DC al ah	17/10	DEC (HL)	35	11
CALL M,addr		17/10	DEC (IX+x)	DD 35 xx	23
CALL NC, addr		17/10	DEC (IY+x)	FD 35 xx	23
CALL NZ, addr		17/10	DEC BC	OB	6
ALL P,addr		17/10	DEC DE	1B	6
CALL PE,addr		17/10	DEC HIL	2B	6
CALL PO.addr	E4 al ah	17/10			

DEC IX	DD 2B	10	INC (IX+x)	DD 34 xx	23
DEC IY	FD 2B	10	INC (IY+x)	FD 34 xx	23
DEC SP	3B	6	INC BC	03	6
DI	F3	4	INC DE	13	6
DJNZ,dis	10 ds	13/8	INC HL	23	6
EI	FB	4	INC IX	DD 23	10
EX DE,HL	EB	4	INC IY	FD 23	10
EX AF,AF'	08	4	INC SP	33	6
'EX (SP),HL	E3	19	IND	ED AA	16
EX (SP),IX	DD E3	23	INDR	ED BA	21/16
EX)SP),IY	FD E3	23	INI	ED A2	16
EXX	D9	4	INDIR	ED B2	21/16
HALT	76	4	JP addr	C3 al ah	10
IM O	ED 46	8	JP C,addr	DA al ah	10
IM 1	ED 56	8	JP M,addr	FA al ah	10
IM 2	ED 5E	8	JP NC,addr	D2 al ah	10
IN A,(C)	ED 78	12	JP NZ,addr	C2 al ah	10
IN B,(C)	ED 40	12	JP P,addr	F2 al ah	10
IN C,(C)	ED 48	12	JP PE,addr	EA al ah	10
IN D,(C)	ED 50	12	JP PO,addr	E2 al ah	10
IN'E,(C)	ED 58	12	JP Z,addr	CA al ah	10
IN H,(C)	ED 60	12	JP (HL)	E9	4
IN L,(C)	ED 68	12	JP (IX)	DD E9	8
IN A, (port)	DB pt	11	JP (IY)	FD E9	8
INC A	3C	4	JR dis	18 ds	12
INC B	04	4	JR C,dis	38 ds	12/7
INC C	0C	4	JR NC,dis	30 ds	12/7
INC D	14	4	JR NZ,dis	20 ds	12/7
INC E	1C	4	JR Z,dis	28 ds	12/7
INC H	24	4	LD (addr),A	32 al ah	13
INC L	2C	4	LD (addr),BC	ED 43 al ah	20
INC (HL)	34	11	LD (addr),DE	ED 53 al ah	20

<u>M</u> /	ASTER MA	сні	NE	co	DE		UR	AMSTRAD	CPC	246	64 A		664	
חז	(addr),HL	FD	63		ah	20	T) A,(BC)	0A				7	
	(addr),HL				an	16		A,(DE)	1A				7	
	(addr), IX				ah	20								
	(addr),IX) A,(HL)	7E				7	
	(addr), II (addr), SP					20),A,A	7F				4	
	(BC),A	02	15	aı	all	20 7) A,B	78				4	
	(DE),A	12				, 7		A,C	79				4	
	•	12 77				7 7		A,D	7A 7D				4	
	(HL),A							A,E	7B				4	
	(HL),B	70				7		A,H	7C	r 7			4	
	(HL),C	71				7		A,I		57			9	
	(HL),D	72				7		A,L	7D	r -			4	
	(HL),E	73				7		A,R	ED				9	
	(HL),H	74				7		A,data	3E				7	
	(HL),L	75				7		$A_{,(IX+x)}$			xx		19	
	(HL),data					7		A,(IY+x)	FD	7E			19	
	(IX+x),A	DD				19		B,A	47				4	
	-	DD				19		В,В	40				4	
	(IX+x),C	DD				19		B,C	41				4	
	-	DD				19	LD	B,D	42				4	
		DD				19	LD	B,E	43				4	
LD	(IX+x),H	DD	74	xx		19	LD	B,H	44				4	
LD	(IX+x),L	DD	75	xx		19	LD	B,L	45				4	
LD	(IX+x),dt	DD	36	xx	dd	19	LD	B,data	06	dd			7	
LD	(IY+x),A	FD	77	xx		19	LD	B,(HL)	46				7	
LD	(IY+x),B	FD	70	хx		19	LD	$B_{,}(IX+x)$	DD	46	xx		19	
LD	(IY+x),C	FD	71	xx		19	LD	B,(IY+x)	FD	46	xx		19	
LD	(IY+x),D	FD	72	xx		19	LD	BC,data	01	d1	dh		10	
LD	(IY+x),E	FD	73	xx		19	LD	BC,(addr)	ED	4B	al	ah	20	
LD	(IY +x),H	FD	74	xx		19	LD	C,A	4F				4	
LD	(IY+x),L	FD	75	xx		19	LD	C,B	48				4	
LD	(IY+x),dt	FD	36	xx	dd	19	LD	C,C	49				4	
LD	A,(addr)	3A	al	ah		13	LD	C,D	4A				. 4	

LD C,E	4B	4	LD H,B	60	4
LD C,H	4C	4	LD H,C	61	4
LD C,L	4D	4	LD H,D	62	4
LD C,data	0E dd	7	LD H,E	63	4
LD C,(HL)	4E	7	LD.H,H	64	4
LD C,(IX+x)	DD 4E xx	19	LD H,L	65	4
LD C,(IY+x)	FD 4E xx	19	LD H,data	26 dd	7
LD D,A	57	4	LD H,(HL)	66	7
LD D,B	50	4	LD H,(IX+x)	DD 66 xx	19
LD D,C	51	4	LD H,(IY+x)	FD 66 xx	19
LD D,D	52	4	LD HL,data	21 dl dh	10
LD D,E	53	4	LD HL,(addr)	ED 6B al ah	21
LD D,H	54	4	LD HL,(addr)	2A al ah	16
LD D,L	55	4	LD I,A	ED 47	9
LD D,data	16 dd	4	LD IX,data	DD 21 d1 dh	14
LD D,(HL)	56	7	LD IX,(addr)	DD 2A al ah	20
LD D,(IX+x)	DD 56 xx	19	LD IY,data	FD 21 dl dh	14
LD D,(IY+x)	FD 56 xx	19	LD IY,(addr)	FD 2A al ah	20
LD DE,data	11 dl dh	10	LD L,A	6F	4
LD DE,(addr)	ED 5B al ah	20	LD L,B	68	4
LD E,A	5F	4	LD L,C	69	4
LD E,B	58	4	LD L,D	6A	4
LD E,C	59	4	LD L,E	6B	4
LD E,D	5A	4	LD L,H	6C	4
LD E,E	5B	4	LD L,L	6D	4
LD E,H	5C	4	LD L,data	2E dd	7
LD E,L	5D	4	LD L,(HL)	6E	7
LD E,data	1E dd	7	LD L,(IX+x)	DD 6E xx	19
LD E,(HL)	5E	7	LD L,(IY+x)	FD 6E xx	19
LD E,(IX+x)	DD 5E xx	19	LD R,A	ED 4F	9
LD E,(IY+x)	FD 5E xx	19	LD SP,data	31 d1 dh	10
LD H,A	67	4	LD SP,(addr)	ED 7B al ah	20

MASTER MA	CHINE CODE	ON YOUF	AMSTRAD CI	PC 464 AND 664
LD SP,HL	F9	6	POP AF	F1 10
LD SP,IX	DD F9	10	POP BC	Cl 10
LD SP,IY	FD F9	10	POP DE	D1 10
LDD	ED A8	16	POP HL	E1 10
LDDR	ED B8	21/16	POP IX	DD E1 14
LDI	ED AO	16	POP IY	FD E1 14
LDIR	ED BO	21/16	PUSH AF	F5 11
NEG	ED 44	8	PUSH BC	C5 11
NOP	00	4	PUSH DE	D5 11
OR A	B7	4	PUSH HL	E5 11
OR B	в0	4	PUSH IX	DD E5 15
OR C	B1	4	PUSH IY	FD E5 15
OR D	B2	4	RES 0,A	CB 87 8
OR E	B3	4	RES 0,B	CB 80 8
OR H	B4	4	RES 0,C	CB 81 8
OR L	B5	4	RES 0,D	CB 82 8
OR data	F6 dd	7	RES 0,E	CB 83 8
OR (HL)	B6	7	RES 0,H	CB 84 8
OR (IX+x)	DD B6 xx	19	RES 0,L	CB 85 8
OR (IY+x)	FD B6 xx	19	RES 0,(HL)	CB 86 15
OTDR	ED BB	21/16	RES O,(IX+x)	DD CB xx 86 23
OTIR	ED B3	21/16	RES 0,(IY+x)	FD CB xx 86 23
OUT (C),A	ED 79	12		formation about how
OUT (C),B	ED 41	12	to calculate of	
OUT (C),C	ED 49	12	RET	C9 10
OUT (C),D	ED 51	12	RET C	D8 11/5
OUT (C),E	ED 59	12	RET M	F8 11/5
OUT (C),H	ED 61	12	RET NC	DO 11/5
OUT (C),L	ED 69	12	RET NZ	C0 11/5
OUT (port),A	D3 pt	11	RET P	F0 11/5
OUTD	ED AB	16	RET PE	E8 11/5
OUTI	ED A3	16	RET PO	EO 11/5

	<u> </u>			APPEND	<u>1X 1</u>
RET Z	C8	11/5	RR L	CB 1D 8	3
RETI	ED 4D	14	RR (HL)	CB 1E 1	5
RETN	ED 45	14	RR (IX+x)	DD CB xx 1E 23	3
RL A	CB 17	8	RR (IY+x)	FD CB xx 1E 2	3
RL B	CB 10	8	RRA	1F 4	4
RL C	CB 11	8	RRC A	CB OF	3
RL D	CB 12	8	RRC B	CB 08 8	3
RL E	CB 13	8	RRC C	CB 09 8	3
RL H	CB 14	8	RRC D	CB OA	3
RL L	CB 15	8	RRC E	CB 0B	3
RL (HL)	CB 16	15	RRC H	CB OC 8	3
RL (IX+x)	DD CB xx 16	23	RRC L	CB OD 8	3
RL (IY+x)	FD CB xx 16	23	RRC (HL)	CB OE 8	3
RLA	17	4	RRC (IX+x)	DD CB xx OE 23	3
RLC A	CB 07	8	RRC (IY+x)	FD CB xx OE 23	3
RLC B	CB 00	8	RRCA	OF 4	ł
RLC C	CB 01	8	RRD	ED 67 18	3
RLC D	CB 02	8	RST 0 (00)	C7 11	-
RLC E	CB 03	8	RST 1 (08)	CF 11	L
RLC H	CB 04	8	RST 2 (10)	D7 11	
RLC L	CB 05	8	RST 3 (18)	DF 11	
RLC (HL)	CB 06	15	RST 4 (20)	E7 11	
RLC (IX+x)	DD CB xx O6	23	RST 5 (28)	EF . 11	
RLC $(IY+x)$	FD CB xx 06	23	RST 6 (30)	F7 11	
RLCA	07	4	RST 7 (38)	FF 11	
RLD	ED 6F	18	SBC A,A	9F 4	F
RR A	CB 1F	8	SBC A,B	98 4	ŀ
RR B	CB 18	8	SBC A,C	99 4	ŀ
RR C	CB 19	8	SBC A,D	9A 4	ł
RR D	CB 1A	8	SBC A,E	9B 4	F
RR E	CB 1B	8	SBC A,H	9C 4	ŀ
RR H	CB 1C	. 8	SBC A,L	9D 4	ł

APPENDIX 1

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664								
SBC A,data	DE dd	7	SRA H	CB 2C	8			
SEC A,(HL)	9E	7	SRA L	CB 2D	8			
SBC A,(IX+x)	DD 9E xx	19	SRA (HL)	CB 2E	15			
SBC A,(IY+x)	FD 9E xx	19	SRA (IX+x)	DD CB xx 2E	23			
SCF	37	4	SRA (IY+x)	FD CB xx 2E	23			
SET 0,A	CB C7	8	SRL A	CB 3F	8			
SET 0,B	CB CO	8	SRL B	CB 38	8			
SET 0,C	CB C1	8	SRL C	CB 39	8			
SET 0,D	CB C2	8	SRL D	CB 3A	8			
SET 0,E	CB C3	8	SRL E	CB 3B	8			
SET 0,H	CB C4	8	SRL H	CB 3C	8			
SET 0,L	CB C5	8	SRL L	CB 3D	8			
SET 0,(HL)	CB C6	15	SRL (HL)	CB 3E	15			
SET 0,(IX+x)	DD CB xx C6	23	SRL (IX+x)	DD CB xx 3E	23			
SET 0,(IY+x)	DD CB xx C6	23	SRL (IY+x)	FD CB xx 3E	23			
See BIT for inf	formation about	t how	SUB A	97	4			
to calculate oth	ner bits.		SUB B	90	4			
SLA A	CB 27	8	SUB C	91	4			
SLA B	CB 20	8	SUB D	92	4			
SLA C	CB 21	8	SUB E	93	4			
SLA D	CB 22	8	SUB H	94	4			
SLA E	CB 23	8	SUB L	95	4			
SLA II	CB 24	8	SUB (HL)	96	7			
SLA L	CB 25	8	SUB (IX+x)	DD 96 xx	19			
SLA (HL)	CB 26	15	SUB (IY+x)	FD 96 xx	19			
SLA (IX+x)	DD CB xx 26	23	XOR A	AF	4			
SLA (IY+x)	FD CB xx 26	23	XOR B	A8	4			
SRA A	CB 2F	8	XOR C	A9	4			
SRA B	CB 28	8	XOR D	AA	4			
SRA C	CB 29	8	XOR E	AB	4			
SRA D	CB 2A	8	XOR H	AC	4			
SRA E	CB 2B	8	XOR L	AD	4			

XOR data	EE dd	7	XOR (IX+x)	DD AE xx	19
XOR (HL)	AE	7	XOR (IY+x)	FD AE xx	19

xx= index register displacement value (2's complement).

ds= relative jump value (2's complement).

dd = data byte.

al= low byte of address.

ah = high byte of address.

dl= low byte of 16-bit data.

dh = high byte of 16-bit data.

pt= port number.

Note: the clock cycles are given for comparison purposes only, as the clock speed of the Amstrad is affected by the video generating process.

APPENDIX 2 Hexadecimal, decimal and two's complement numbers

Hex	Dec	Dec 2's	Hex	Dec	Dec 2's	Hex	Dec	Dec 2's	Hex	Dec	Dec 2's
		comp.			comp.			comp.			comp.
00	0	+Ô	20	32	+32	40	64	+64	60	96	+96
01	1	+1	21	33	+33	41	65	+65	61	97	+97
02	2 3	+2	22	34	+34	42	66	+66	62	98	+98
03	3	+3	23	35	+35	43	67	+67	63	99	+99
04	4	+4	24	36	+36	44	68	+68	64	100	+100
05	5	+5	25	37	+37	45	69	+69	65	101	+101
06	6	+6	26	38	+38	46	70	+70	66	102	+102
07	7	+7	27	39	+39	47	71	+71	67	103	+103
08	8	+8	28	40	+40	48	72	+72	68	104	+104
09	9	+9.	29	41	+41	49	73	+73	69	105	+105
0A	10	+10	2A	42	+42	4A	74	. +74	6A	106	+106
OB	11	+11	2B	43	+43	4B	75	+75	6B	107	+107
0C	12	+12	2C	44	+44	4C	76	+76	6C	108	+108
OD	13	+13	2D	45	+45	4D	77	+77	6D	109	+109
0E	14	+14	2E	46	+46	4E	78	+78	6E -	110	+110
OF	15	+15	2F	47	+47	4F	79	+79	6F	111	+111
10	16	+16	30	48	+48	50	80	+80	70	112	+112
11	17	+17	31	49	+49	51	81	+81	71	113	+113
12	18	+18	32	50	+50	52	82	+82	72	114	+114
13	19	+19	33	51	+51	53	83	+83	73	115	+115
14	20	+20	34	52	+52	54	84	+84	74	116	+116
15	21	+21	35	53	+53	55	85	+85	75	117	+117
16	22	+22	36	54	+54	56	86	+86	76	118	+118
17	23	+23	37	55	+55	57	87	+87	77	119	+119
18	24	+24	38	56	+56	58	88	+88	78	120	+120
19	25	+25	39	57	+57	59	89	+89	79	121	+121
1A	26	+26	3A	58	+58	5A	90	+90	7A	122	+122
1B	27	+27	3B	59	+59	5B	91	+91	7B	123	+123
1C	28	+28	3C	60	+60	5C	92	+92	7C	124	+124
1D	29	+29	3D	61	+61	5D	93	+93	7D	125	+125
1E	30	+30	3E	62	+62	5E	94	+94	7E	126	+126
1F	31	+31	3F	63	+63	5F	95	+95	7F	127	+127

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

٢	Hex	Dec	Dec 2's	Her	Dec	Dec 2's	Hov	Dec	Dec 2's	How	Doc	Dec 21c
	ich		comp.	I CA	Dee	comp.	LICA	Dec	comp.	nex	Dec	
	80	128	-128	AO	160	-96	C0	192	-64	E0	224	-32
	81	129	-127	Al	161	-95	C1	193	-63	El	225	-31
	82	130	-126	A2	162	-94	C2	194	-62	E2	226	-30
	83	131	-125	A3	163	-93	C3	195	-61	E3	227	-29
	84	132	-124	A4	164	-92	C4	196	-60	E4	228	-28
	85	133	-123	A5	165	-91	C5	197	-59	E5	229	-27
	86	134	-122	A6	166	-90	C6	198	-58	E6	230	-26
	87	135	-121	A7	167	-89	C7	199	-57	E7	231	-25
	88	136	-120	A8	168	-88	C8	200	-56	E8	232	-24
	89	137	-119	A9	169	-87	C9	201	-55	E9	233	-23
	8A	138	-118	AA	170	-86	CA	202	-54	EA	234	-22
	8B	139	-117	AB	171	-85	CB	203	-53	EB	235	-21
	8C	140	-116	AC	172	-84	CC	204	-52	EC	236	-20
	8D	141	-115	AD	173	-83	CD	205	-51	ED	237	-19
ł	8E	142	-114	AE	174	-82	CE	206	-50	EE	238	-18
	8F	143	-113	AF	175	-81	CF	207	-49	EF	239	-17
	90	144	-112	B0	176	-80	DO	208	-48	F0	240	-16
	91	145	-111	B 1	177	-79	D1	209	-47	F1	241	-15
	92	146	-110	B2	178	-78	D2	210	-46	F2	242	-14
	93	147	-109	B3	179	-77	D3	211	-45	F3	243	-13
	94	148	-108	B4	180	-76	D4	212	-44	F4	244	-12
	95	149	-107	B5	181	-75	D5	213	-43	F5	245	-11
	96	150	-106	B6	182	-74	D6	214	-42	F6	246	-10
	97	151	-105	B7	183	-73	D7	215	-41	F7	247	-9
	98	152	-104	BS	184	-72	D8	216	-40	F8	248	-8
	99	153	-103		185	-71	D9	217	-39	F9	249	-7
	9A	154	-102		186	-70	DA	218	-38	FA	250	-6
		155	-101		187	-69	DB	219		FB	251	-5
		156	-100		188	-68	DC	220		FC	252	-4
		157	-99		189	-67	DD.	221		FD	253	-3
		158	-98		190	-66	DE	222		FE	254	-2
	9F	159	-97	BF	191	-65	DF	223	-33	FF	255	-1

Index

Accumulator (A register) 10	Co
ADC 10	Co
ADD 10	Co
Address bus 1, 3	Co
Alternative register set 4, 5, 28	Co
AND 11, 49, 122	Co
Arithmetic 10	Co
Arithmetic and logic unit 3, 4	Co
Array descriptor blocks 68	Co
Assembler programs 23	Co
Assembly 21	CF
Auxiliary carry flag 5, 11, 13	CF
AY-3-8912 26	CI
Base co-ordinates 108	CF
BASIC ROM 25	CI
Binary coded decimal (BCD) 5, 13	CH
Binary numbers 1, 98	CI
Binary searching 101	D
Bit 12	Da
Bits 1	De
Block moves 14	De
Bubble sort 34	De
Bytes 1	D
CALL 9, 17	Di
CALL (BASIC) 40	Di
Caps lock simulation 87	Di
Carry flag 4, 11, 41, 51, 56	Di
Cassette firmware routines 30	D.
CCF 11	De
Circle formula 91	D
Clear 5	Eİ
Clock 3, 26, 42	8-1
Code loading routine 39	82
-	

Colours	109
Comparisons	79
Complement	11
Conditional calls	10
Conditional jumps	9
Conditional returns	88, 125
Control codes	23, 128
Control unit	3,4
Corruption	20, 125
Counters	78
СР	12, 21
CPD	15
CPI	15
CPIR	15
CPL	11
CPU	25
CRT chip	26
DAA	13
Data bus	1,3
Delayed replacement sort	43
Delays	126
Devpac	23
DI	16
Direct addressing	6
Disassembly	23
Disk firmware routines	31
Displacements	5
DJNZ	9, 17, 20
Documentation	18, 125
Dynamic memory	5
EÍ	16
8-bit multiply	98
8255 chip	26

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

8080 CPU	4	LDDR	15
Error reporting	124	LDI	14
EX DE,HL	48	LDIR	14, 81
Exchange instructions	8	Loading instructions	6
Exponent	44	Logic	5
False	5	Logical instructions	11
Firmware ROM	25	Loops	9, 17, 36
Firmware routines	27	Machine firmware routine	s 31
Flags	4,9	Mantissa	44
Floating point numbers	43, 44	Manual assembly	21
Flow diagrams	18	Masking	111
Garbage collection	40,87	Memory pointers 5	, 6, 14, 20
Gate array	25	Messages	127
General purpose registers	4	Mnemonics	6
Graphics firmware routines	99, 102	Monitor programs	23
Halt	16	Multiplication	78,98
Hexadecimal numbering	2	NEG	11
I/O instructions	15	NOP	16, 122
I/O pin	13	Object code	21, 23
Immediate addressing	6	Offsets	5,22
IN	14	Operation codes (op codes	s) 6
INC	10	OR	11
Index registers 5	, 77, 84	Out	14
Indexed addressing	24	Overflow	4
Ink encoding	112	Overflow flag	5
INPUT	18	Palette registers	109
Instructions 6, App	endix 1	Parameter passing	40
Integer variables	37,40	Parity/overflow flag	5,15
Interrupt modes	16	Performing instructions	6
Interrupt vector register	5	Physical co-ordinates	108
Interrupts	16, 28	Pixel layout	108
IX register	5	Plotting circles	91
IY register	5	POP	8
Joysticks	27, 29	Ports	26
Jumpblock	27	PPI chip	26
Kernel firmware routines	31, 122	Print co-ordinates	107
Keyboard	18, 27	Printer routine	32
Keyboard firmware routines	28,88	Printing strings	127
KM WAIT CHAR	20	Program counter	3, 6, 9
Labels	20	Program jumps	8
Latching	26	PSG chip	26
LDD	14	PUSH	8,42

RAM	2,25	Sending data	20
Random events	6	SET	5,8
Real numbers	43	Set carry flag (SCF)	.8
Recursion	129	Shell-Metzner sort	43, 101
Redefining keys	87	Shift	12
Refresh register	5	Shifting bits	. 98
Register pairs	4	Sign flag	5
Registers	3	Signed numbers	2,40
Reiteration	17	6845 chip	26
Relative graphic co-ordinates	s 108	16-bit subtraction	50
Relative jumps 9	, 21, 70	SLA	12
Relocatable code	70	Sound	31
Reset	5,8	Source code	23
Resident system extensions	119	Square roots	100
Restarts	15,27	SŔA	13
Restoring the SP	100	SRL	12
RET	17	Stack operations	8
RETN	16	Stack pointer	4, 7, 8
Return address	128	Standard graphics co-ords	108
Returning data	20	Storing code in strings	87
RL	12	String comparisons	57
RLC	12	String descriptors	53
RLD	13	String printing	124
ROM 2	2, 25, 27	Strings	53
Rotate	12, 51	SUB	10
RR	12	Subroutines	16, 124
RRA	12	Subtract flag	4
RRC	12	Testing for digits	69
RRCA	12	Testing for zero	41
RRD	13	Testing values	12
	restarts	Text firmware routines	29
RSX	119	The code machine	23
RSX tables	122	True	5
SBC	10, 41		, 7, 9, 50,
Screen addresses	110		pendix 2
Screen base address	110	TXT OUTPUT	20
Screen co-ordinates	107	Upper case characters	85,87
Screen firmware routines	29, 17	User graphics co-ordinates	108
Screen layout	108	Variables	20,24
Screen modes	103	Vectoring	20, 24
Screen offset	105	Video display	26
Self-modifying code	24	Video flyback	20 31
sen mounying code	27	, ruco ny ouok	51

MASTER MACHINE CODE ON YOUR AMSTRAD CPC 464 AND 664

Video RAM	25, 108	XOR	11, 49, 51, 70, 117
Waiting	127	Z80	1, 3
Wild cards	73	Zero flag	5
	~		

Other titles from Sunshine

SPECTRUMBOOKS	
ZX Spectrum Astronomy Maurice Gavin ISBN 0 946408 24 6	£6.95
Spectrum Adventures A guide to playing and writing adventures Tony Bridge & Roy Carnell ISBN 0 946408 07 6	£5.95
Spectrum Machine Code Applications David Laine ISBN 0 946408 17 3	£6.95
The Working Spectrum David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 00 9	£5.95
Master your ZX Microdrive Andrew Pennell ISBN 0 946408 19 X	£6.95
COMMODORE 64 BOOKS	
COMMODORE 64 BOOKS Mathematics for the Commodore 64 Czes Kosniowski ISBN 0 946408 14 9	£5.95
Mathematics for the Commodore 64 Czes Kosniowski	£5.95 £5.95
Mathematics for the Commodore 64 Czes Kosniowski ISBN 0 946408 14 9 Advanced Programming Techniques on the Commodore 64 David Lawrence	
Mathematics for the Commodore 64 Czes Kosniowski ISBN 0 946408 14 9 Advanced Programming Techniques on the Commodore 64 David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 23 8 Graphic Art for the Commodore 64 Boris Allan	£5.95

The Working Commodore 64 David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 02 5	£5.95
Commodore 64 Machine Code Master David Lawrence & Mark England ISBN 0 946408 05 X	£6.95
ELECTRONBOOKS.	
Graphic Art for the Electron Boris Allan ISBN 0 946408 20 3	£5.95
Programming for Education on the Electron Computer John Scriven & Patrick Hall	£5.95
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
isbn 0 946408 21 1	£5.9
ISBN 0 946408 21 1 BBC COMPUTER BOOKS Functional Forth for the BBC computer Boris Allan	
ISBN 0 946408 21 1 BBC COMPUTER BOOKS Functional Forth for the BBC computer Boris Allan ISBN 0 946408 04 1 Graphic Art for the BBC computer Boris Allan	£5.9

The Amstrad CPC 464 has become established as a reliable, easy to use, low cost home micro, and now it has been joined by the equally appealing 664. In this book Jeff Naylor and Diane Rogers show you how to make better use of your Amstrad, by programming in machine code. This makes programs run much faster, and opens the door on a host of new applications for the CPC 464. and 664

The book describes the reasons for wanting to tackle machine code programming, before giving a detailed overview of the hardware of the Amstrad. There are routines to show how to write a database program, how to boost the graphics, how to produce graphs, and how to write programs without using the BASIC language at all.

Jeff Naylor and Diane Rogers write with the person who is new to these concepts very much in mind, so their book will be ideal for newcomers to machine code who would like to expand their use of the computer to encompass machine code.

The Authors

Jeff Naylor and Diane Rogers are the authors of **Inside your Spectrum**, which was described by **What Micro** as essential reading for anyone wanting to get into Spectrum machine code programming. Jeff Naylor is a regular contributor to **Popular Computing Weekly** and other micro magazines.





£6.95 net

ISBN 0 946408 80 7